Contents

1

1 How to Read these Operating Instructions

1.1.1 Copyright, Limitation of Liability and Revision Rights

This publication contains information proprietary to DanfossDanfossDanfoss. By accepting and using this manual the user agrees that the information contained herein will be used solely for operating equipment from DanfossDanfossDanfoss or equipment from other vendors provided that such equipment is intended for communication with DanfossDanfossDanfoss equipment over a serial communication link. This publication is protected under the Copyright laws of Denmark and most other countries.

DanfossDanfossDanfoss does not warrant that a software program produced according to the guidelines provided in this manual will function properly in every physical, hardware or software environment.

Although DanfossDanfossDanfoss has tested and reviewed the documentation within this manual, DanfossDanfossDanfoss makes no warranty or representation, neither expressed nor implied, with respect to this documentation, including its quality, performance, or fitness for a particular purpose.

In no event shall DanfossDanfossDanfoss be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages arising out of the use, or the inability to use information contained in this manual, even if advised of the possibility of such damages. In particular, DanfossDanfossDanfoss is not responsible for any costs, including but not limited to those incurred as a result of lost profits or revenue, loss or damage of equipment, loss of computer programs, loss of data, the costs to substitute these, or any claims by third parties.

DanfossDanfossDanfoss reserves the right to revise this publication at any time and to make changes to its contents without prior notice or any obligation to notify former or present users of such revisions or changes.

1

These Operating Instructions will introduce all aspects of your VLT AQUA Drive.

Available literature for VLT AQUA Drive:

- Operating Instructions MG.20.MX.YY provide the neccessary information for getting the drive up and running.
- Design Guide MG.20.NX.YY entails technical information about the drive design and customer applications.
- Programming Guide MG.20.OX.YY provides information on how to programme and includes complete parameter descriptions.

X = Revision number

YY = Language code

Danfoss Drives technical literature is also available online at www.danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Documentations/Technical+Documentation.

1.1.2 Approvals

1.1.3 Symbols

Symbols used in these Operating Instructions.

NB!
Indicates something to be noted by the reader.

Indicates a general warning.

Indicates a high-voltage warning.

* Indicates default setting

2 Safety

2.1.1 Safety note

The voltage of the frequency converter is dangerous whenever connected to mains. Incorrect installation of the motor, frequency converter or fieldbus may cause damage to the equipment, serious personal injury or death. Consequently, the instructions in this manual, as well as national and local rules and safety regulations, must be complied with.

Safety Regulations

1. The frequency converter must be disconnected from mains if repair work is to be carried out. Check that the mains supply has been disconnected and that the necessary time has passed before removing motor and mains plugs.
2. The [STOP/RESET] key on the control panel of the frequency converter does not disconnect the equipment from mains and is thus not to be used as a safety switch.
3. Correct protective earthing of the equipment must be established, the user must be protected against supply voltage, and the motor must be protected against overload in accordance with applicable national and local regulations.
4. The earth leakage currents are higher than 3.5 mA.
5. Protection against motor overload is set by par. 1-90 *Motor Thermal Protection*. If this function is desired, set par. 1-90 to data value [ETR trip] (default value) or data value [ETR warning]. Note: The function is initialised at 1.16 x rated motor current and rated motor frequency. For the North American market: The ETR functions provide class 20 motor overload protection in accordance with NEC.
6. Do not remove the plugs for the motor and mains supply while the frequency converter is connected to mains. Check that the mains supply has been disconnected and that the necessary time has passed before removing motor and mains plugs.
7. Please note that the frequency converter has voltage inputs other than L1, L2 and L3, when load sharing (linking of DC intermediate circuit) and external 24 V DC have been installed. Check that all voltage inputs have been disconnected and that the necessary time has passed before commencing repair work.

Installation at High Altitudes

Installation at high altitude:
380 - 500 V: At altitudes above 3 km, please contact Danfoss Drives regarding PELV.
525 - 690 V: At altitudes above 2 km, please contact Danfoss Drives regarding PELV.

Warning against Unintended Start

1. The motor can be brought to a stop by means of digital commands, bus commands, references or a local stop, while the frequency converter is connected to mains. If personal safety considerations make it necessary to ensure that no unintended start occurs, these stop functions are not sufficient. 2. While parameters are being changed, the motor may start. Consequently, the stop key [STOP/RESET] must always be activated; following which data can be modified. 3. A motor that has been stopped may start if faults occur in the electronics of the frequency converter, or if a temporary overload or a fault in the supply mains or the motor connection ceases.

Warning:
Touching the electrical parts may be fatal - even after the equipment has been disconnected from mains.

Also make sure that other voltage inputs have been disconnected, such as external 24 V DC, load sharing (linkage of DC intermediate circuit), as well as the motor connection for kinetic back up.

2

2.1.2 General Warning

Warning:
Touching the electrical parts may be fatal - even after the equipment has been disconnected from mains.
Also make sure that other voltage inputs have been disconnected, (linkage of DC intermediate circuit), as well as the motor connection for kinetic back-up.
Before touching any potentially live parts of the VLT AQUA Drive FC 200, wait at least as follows:
380 - 480 V, 110 - 250 kW, wait at least 20 minutes.
380 - 480 V, 315- 1000 kW, wait at least 40 minutes.
525 - 690 V, 45 - 400 kW, wait at least 20 minutes.
525 - 690 V, 450 - 1200 kW, wait at least 30 minutes.
Shorter time is allowed only if indicated on the nameplate for the specific unit.

Leakage Current
The earth leakage current from the VLT AQUA Drive FC 200 exceeds 3.5 mA. According to IEC 61800-5-1 a reinforced Protective Earth connection must be ensured by means of: a min. 10mm² Cu or 16mm² Al PE-wire or an addtional PE wire - with the same cable cross section as the Mains wiring - must be terminated separately.
Residual Current Device
This product can cause a D.C. current in the protective conductor. Where a residual current device (RCD) is used for extra protection, only an RCD of Type B (time delayed) shall be used on the supply side of this product. See also RCD Application Note MN.90.GX.02.
Protective earthing of the VLT AQUA Drive FC 200 and the use of RCD's must always follow national and local regulations.

2.1.3 Before Commencing Repair Work

1. Disconnect the frequency converter from mains
2. Disconnect DC bus terminals 88 and 89
3. Wait at least the time mentioned in section General Warning above
4. Remove motor cable

2.1.4 Special conditions

Electrical ratings:
The rating indicated on the nameplate of the frequency converter is based on a typical 3-phase mains power supply, within the specified voltage, current and temperature range, which is expected to be used in most applications.

The frequency converters also support other special applications, which affect the electrical ratings of the frequency converter. Special conditions which affect the electrical ratings might be:

- Single phase applications
- High temperature applications which require derating of the electrical ratings
- Marine applications with more severe environmental conditions.

Consult the relevant clauses in these instructions and in the **VLT® AQUA Drive Design Guide** for information about the electrical ratings.

Installation requirements:
The overall electrical safety of the frequency converter requires special installation considerations regarding:

- Fuses and circuit breakers for over-current and short-circuit protection
- Selection of power cables (mains, motor, brake, loadsharing and relay)
- Grid configuration (IT,TN, grounded leg, etc.)
- Safety of low-voltage ports (PELV conditions).

Consult the relevant clauses in these instructions and in the **VLT® AQUA Drive Design Guide** for information about the installation requirements.

2.1.5 Caution

The frequency converter's DC link capacitors remain charged after power has been disconnected. To avoid an electrical shock hazard, disconnect the frequency converter from the mains before carrying out maintenance. Before doing service on the frequency converter, wait at least the amount of time indicated below:

Voltage	Power size	**Min. Waiting Time**
380 - 480 V	110 - 250 kW	20 minutes
	315 - 1000 kW	40 minutes
525 - 690 V	45 - 400 kW	20 minutes
	450- 1200 kW	30 minutes
Be aware that there may be high voltage on the DC link even when the LEDs are turned off.		

2.1.6 Avoid unintended Start

While the frequency converter is connected to mains, the motor can be started/stopped using digital commands, bus commands, references or via the Local Control Panel.

- Disconnect the frequency converter from mains whenever personal safety considerations make it necessary to avoid unintended start.
- To avoid unintended start, always activate the [OFF] key before changing parameters.
- Unless terminal 37 is turned off, an electronic fault, temporary overload, a fault in the mains supply, or lost motor connection may cause a stopped motor to start.

2.1.7 Safe Stop Installation

To carry out an installation of a Category 0 Stop (EN60204) in conformity with Safety Category 3 (EN954-1), follow these instructions:

1. The bridge (jumper) between Terminal 37 and 24 V DC must be removed. Cutting or breaking the jumper is not sufficient. Remove it entirely to avoid short-circuiting. See jumper on illustration.
2. Connect terminal 37 to 24 V DC by a short-circuit protected cable. The 24 V DC voltage supply must be interruptible by an EN954-1 Category 3 circuit interrupt device. If the interrupt device and the frequency converter are placed in the same installation panel, you can use an unscreened cable instead of a screened one.

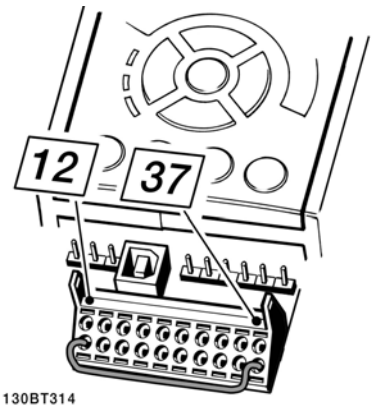


Illustration 2.1: Bridge jumper between terminal 37 and 24 VDC

The illustration below shows a Stopping Category 0 (EN 60204-1) with safety Category 3 (EN 954-1). The circuit interrupt is caused by an opening door contact. The illustration also shows how to connect a non-safety related hardware coast.

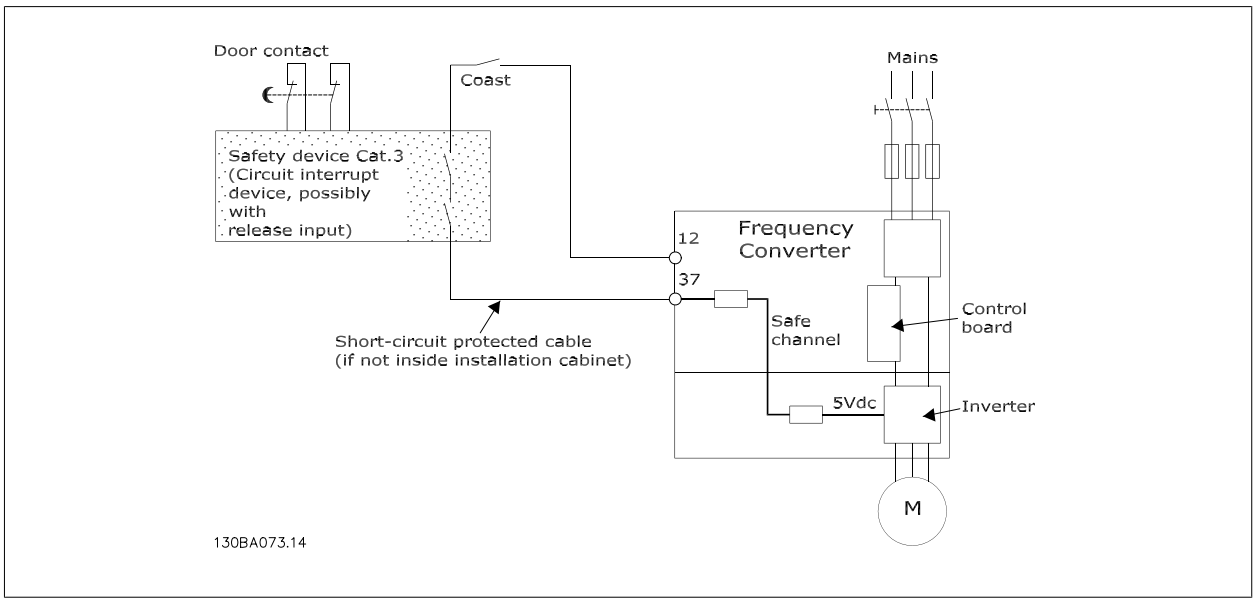


Illustration 2.2: Illustration of the essential aspects of an installation to achieve a Stopping Category 0 (EN 60204-1) with safety Category 3 (EN 954-1).

2.1.8 Safe Stop of the Frequency Converter

For versions fitted with a Safe Stop terminal 37 input, the frequency converter can perform the safety function *Safe Torque Off* (As defined by draft CD IEC 61800-5-2) or *Stop Category 0* (as defined in EN 60204-1).

It is designed and approved suitable for the requirements of Safety Category 3 in EN 954-1. This functionality is called Safe Stop. Prior to integration and use of Safe Stop in an installation, a thorough risk analysis on the installation must be carried out in order to determine whether the Safe Stop functionality and safety category are appropriate and sufficient. In order to install and use the Safe Stop function in accordance with the requirements of Safety Category 3 in EN 954-1, the related information and instructions of the VLT AQUA Drive Design Guide MG.20.NX.YY must be followed! The information and instructions of the Operating Instructions are not sufficient for a correct and safe use of the Safe Stop functionality!

Prüf- und Zertifizierungsstelle
im BG-PRÜFZERT

BGIA
Berufsgenossenschaftliches Institut für Arbeitsschutz
Hauptverband der gewerblichen Berufsgenossenschaften

130BA373.10

Translation
In any case, the German original shall prevail.

Type Test Certificate

05 06004
No. of certificate

Name and address of the holder of the certificate: (customer)
Danfoss Drives A/S, Ulnaes 1
DK-6300 Graasten, Dänemark

Name and address of the manufacturer:
Danfoss Drives A/S, Ulnaes 1
DK-6300 Graasten, Dänemark

Ref. of customer:
Ref. of Test and Certification Body: ApK/Köh VE-Nr. 2003 23220
Date of issue: 13.04.2005

Product designation: Frequency converter with integrated safety functions

Type: VLT® Automation Drive FC 302

Intended purpose: Implementation of safety function „Safe Stop"

Testing based on: EN 954-1, 1997-03,
DKE AK 226.03, 1998-06,
EN ISO 13849-2; 2003-12,
EN 61800-3, 2001-02,
EN 61800-5-1, 2003-09,

Test certificate: No.: 2003 23220 from 13.04.2005

Remarks: The presented types of the frequency converter FC 302 meet the requirements laid down in the test bases.
With correct wiring a category 3 according to DIN EN 954-1 is reached for the safety function.

The type tested complies with the provisions laid down in the directive 98/37/EC (Machinery).

Further conditions are laid down in the Rules of Procedure for Testing and Certification of April 2004.

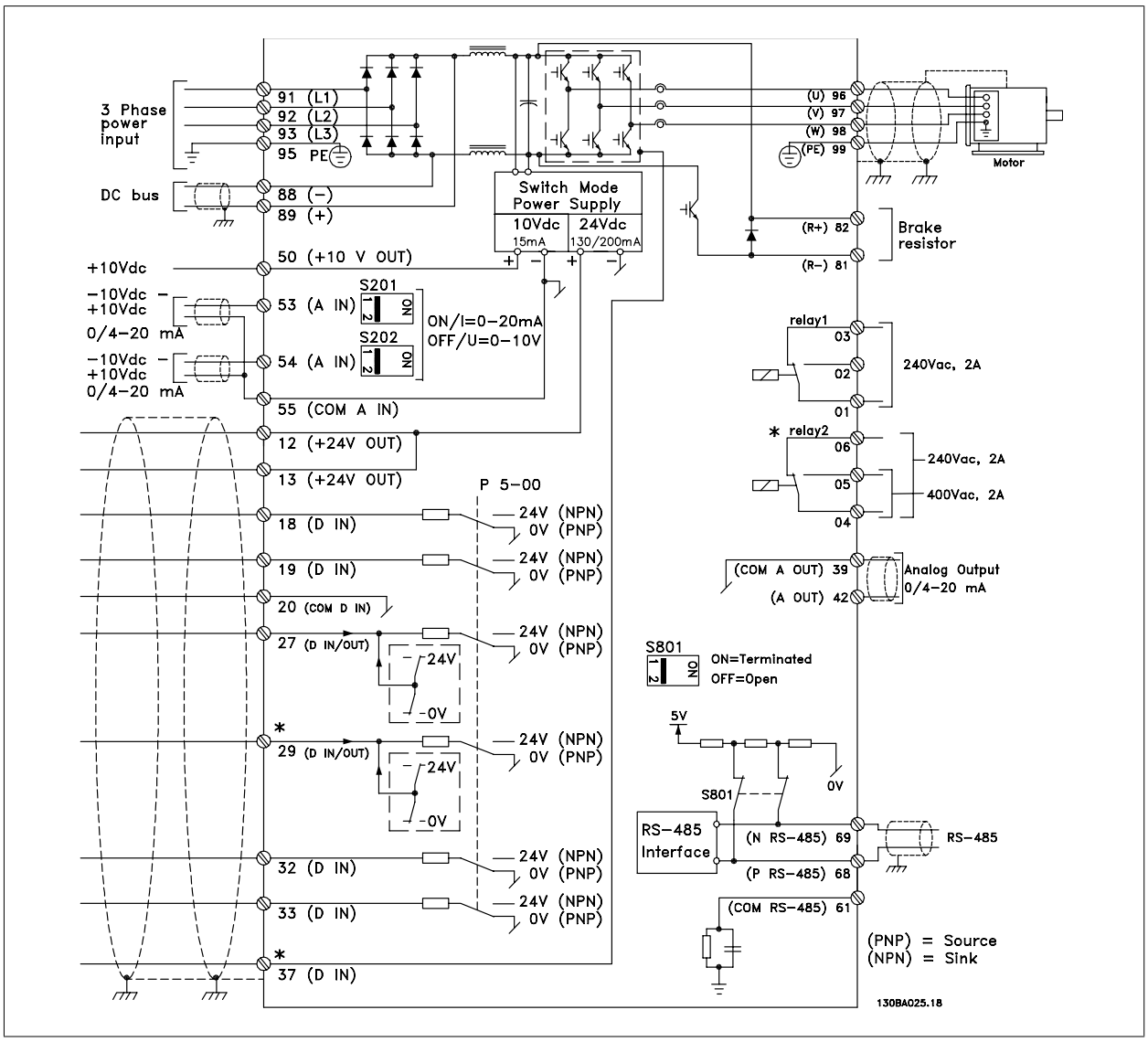
Head of certification body
(Prof. Dr. rer. nat. Dietmar Reinert)

Certification officer
(Dipl.-Ing. R. Apfeld)

FZB10E
01.05

Postal adress: 53754 Sankt Augustin
Office: Alte Heerstraße 111, 53757 Sankt Augustin
Phone: 0 22 41/2 31-02
Fax: 0 22 41/2 31-22 34

2


3 Phase power input
91 (L1)
92 (L2)
93 (L3)
95 PE
DC bus
88 (-)
89 (+)
Switch Mode Power Supply
10Vdc 15mA
24Vdc 130/200mA
(U) 96
(V) 97
(W) 98
(PE) 99
Motor
(R+) 82
(R-) 81
Brake resistor
+10Vdc
50 (+10 V OUT)
-10Vdc -10Vdc +10Vdc 0/4-20 mA
53 (A IN)
S201
ON/I=0-20mA
OFF/U=0-10V
-10Vdc -10Vdc +10Vdc 0/4-20 mA
54 (A IN)
S202
55 (COM A IN)
relay1
03
02
01
240Vac, 2A
* relay2
06
05
04
240Vac, 2A
400Vac, 2A
12 (+24V OUT)
13 (+24V OUT)
P 5-00
18 (D IN)
19 (D IN)
20 (COM D IN)
27 (D IN/OUT)
29 (D IN/OUT)
32 (D IN)
33 (D IN)
37 (D IN)
24V (NPN)
0V (PNP)
24V
0V
(COM A OUT) 39
(A OUT) 42
Analog Output 0/4-20 mA
S801
ON=Terminated
OFF=Open
5V
0V
RS-485 Interface
(N RS-485) 69
(P RS-485) 68
(COM RS-485) 61
RS-485
(PNP) = Source
(NPN) = Sink
130BA025.18

2.1.9 IT Mains

IT Mains

Do not connect frequency converters with RFI-filters to mains supplies with a voltage between phase and earth of more than 440 V for 400 V converters and 760 V for 690 V converters.

For 400 V IT mains and delta earth (grounded leg), mains voltage may exceed 440 V between phase and earth.

For 690 V IT mains and delta earth (grounded leg), mains voltage may exceed 760 V between phase and earth.

par. 14-50 RFI *Filter* can be used to disconnect the internal RFI capacitiors from the RFI filter to ground.

2.1.10 Software Version and Approvals

VLT AQUA Drive

Software version: 1.24

This manual can be used with all VLT AQUA Drive frequency converters with software version 1.24.

The software version number can be found in parameter 15-43.

2.1.11 Disposal Instruction

Equipment containing electrical components must not be disposed of together with domestic waste.
It must be separately collected with electrical and electronic waste according to local and currently valid legislation.

3

3 How to Install

3.1 How to Get Started

3.1.1 About How to Install

This chapter covers mechanical and electrical installations to and from power terminals and control card terminals.
Electrical installation of *options* is described in the relevant Operating Instructions and Design Guide.

3

3.1.2 How to Get Started

The frequency converter is designed to achieve a quick and EMC-correct installation by following the steps described below.

Read the safety instructions before installing the unit.

Mechanical Installation

- Mechanical mounting

Electrical Installation

- Connection to Mains and Protecting Earth
- Motor connection and cables
- Fuses and circuit breakers
- Control terminals - cables

Quick setup

- Local Control Panel, LCP
- Automatic Motor Adaptation, AMA
- Programming

Frame size is depending on enclosure type, power range and mains voltage

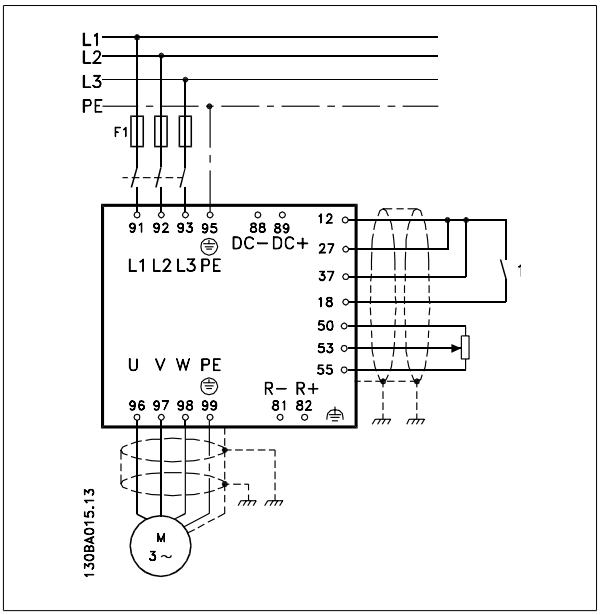


Illustration 3.1: Diagram showing basic installation including mains, motor, start/stop key, and potentiometer for speed adjustment.

3.2 Pre-installation

3.2.1 Planning the Installation Site

NB!
Before performing the installation it is important to plan the installation of the frequency converter. Neglecting this may result in extra work during and after installation.

Select the best possible operation site by considering the following (see details on the following pages, and the respective Design Guides):

- Ambient operating temperature
- Installation method
- How to cool the unit
- Position of the frequency converter
- Cable routing
- Ensure the power source supplies the correct voltage and necessary current
- Ensure that the motor current rating is within the maximum current from the frequency converter
- If the frequency converter is without built-in fuses, ensure that the external fuses are rated correctly.

3.2.2 Receiving the Frequency Converter

When receiving the frequency converter please make sure that the packaging is intact, and be aware of any damage that might have occurred to the unit during transport. In case damage has occurred, contact immediately the shipping company to claim the damage.

3.2.3 Transportation and Unpacking

Before unpacking the frequency converter it is recommended that it is located as close as possible to the final installation site.
Remove the box and handle the frequency converter on the pallet, as long as possible.

NB!
The card box cover contains a drilling master for the mounting holes in the D frames. For the E size, please refer to section *Mechanical Dimensions* later in this chapter.

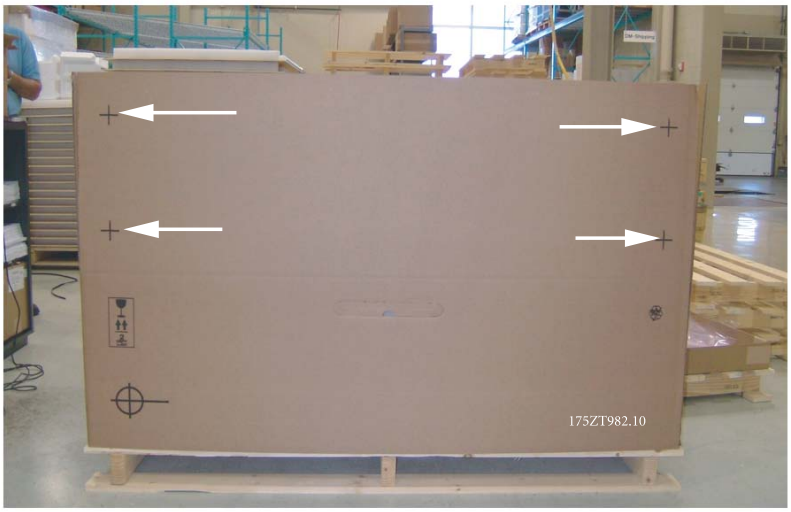


Illustration 3.2: Mounting Template

3.2.4 Lifting

Always lift the frequency converter in the dedicated lifting eyes. For all D and E2 (IP00) frames, use a bar to avoid bending the lifting holes of the frequency converter.

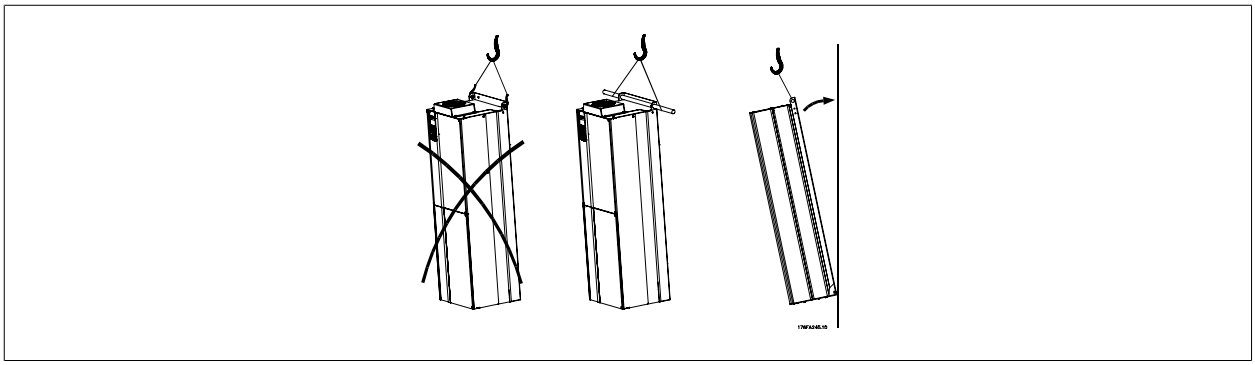


Illustration 3.3: Recommended lifting method, frame sizes D and E .

NB!
The lifting bar must be able to handle the weight of the frequency converter. See *Mechanical Dimensions* for the weight of the different frame sizes. Maximum diameter for bar is 25 cm (1 inch). The angle from the top of the drive to the lifting cable should be 60 degrees or greater.

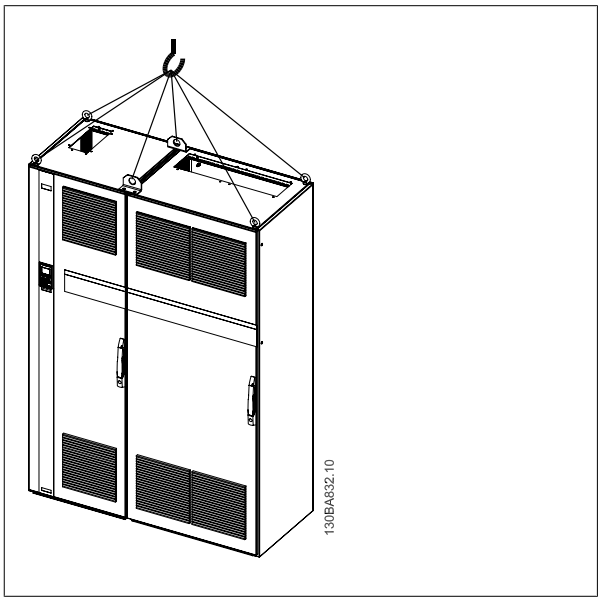


Illustration 3.4: Recommended lifting method, frame size F1.

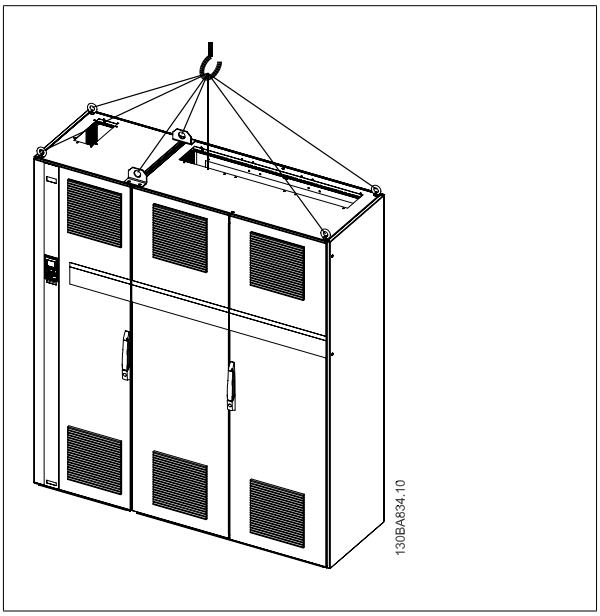


Illustration 3.5: Recommended lifting method, frame size F2.

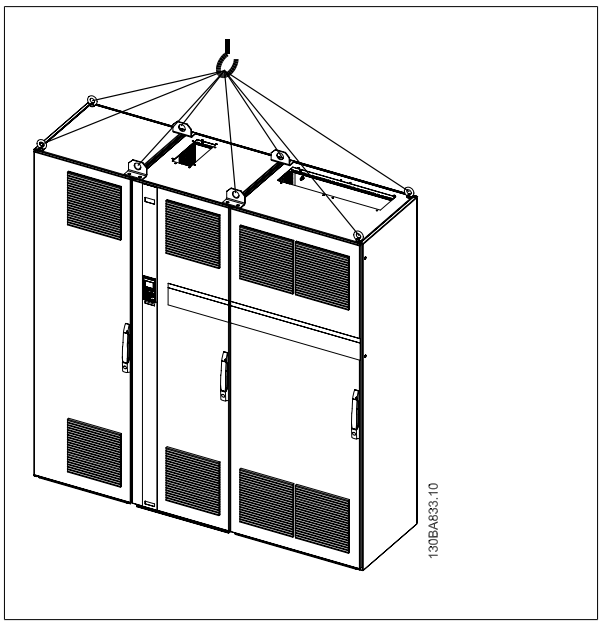


Illustration 3.6: Recommended lifting method, frame size F3.

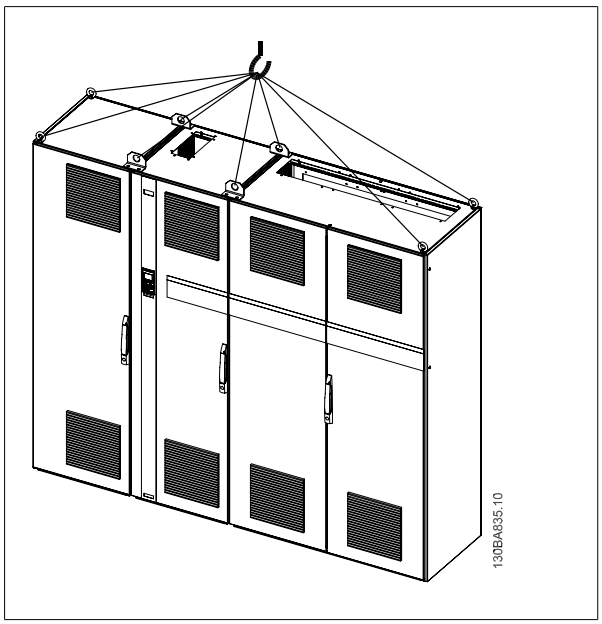


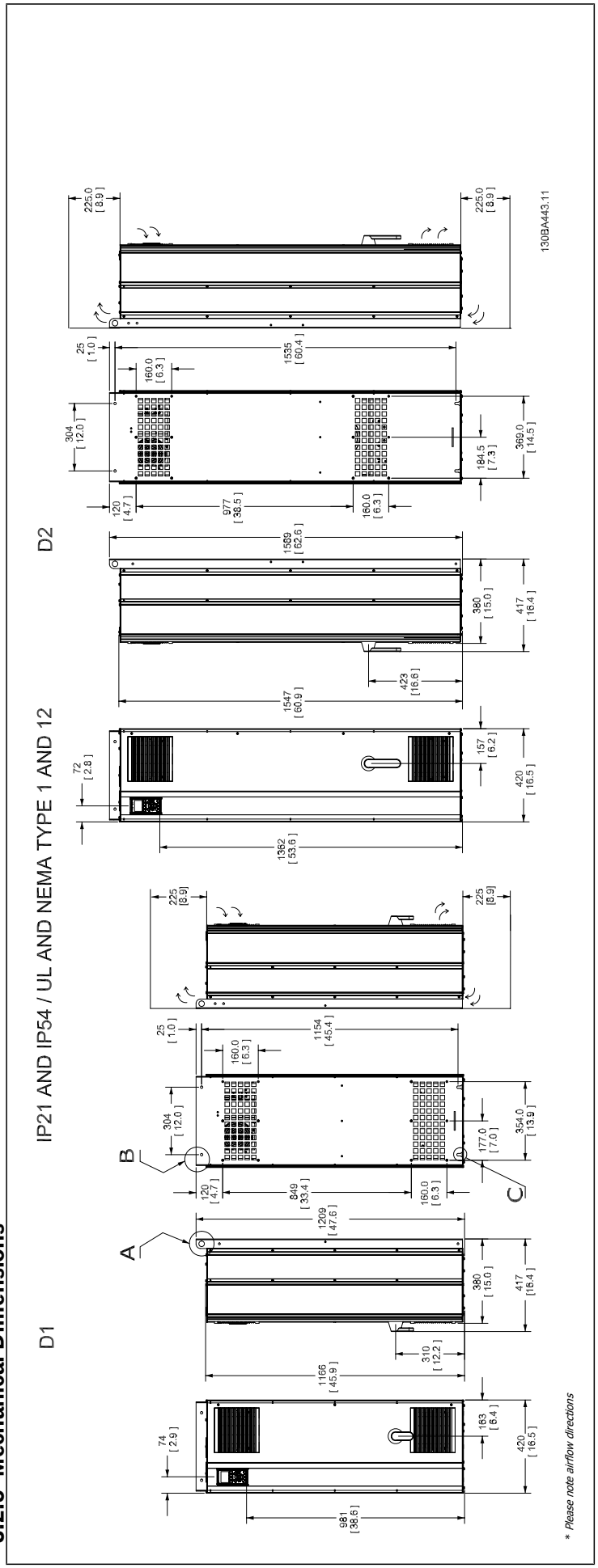
Illustration 3.7: Recommended lifting method, frame size F4.

NB!

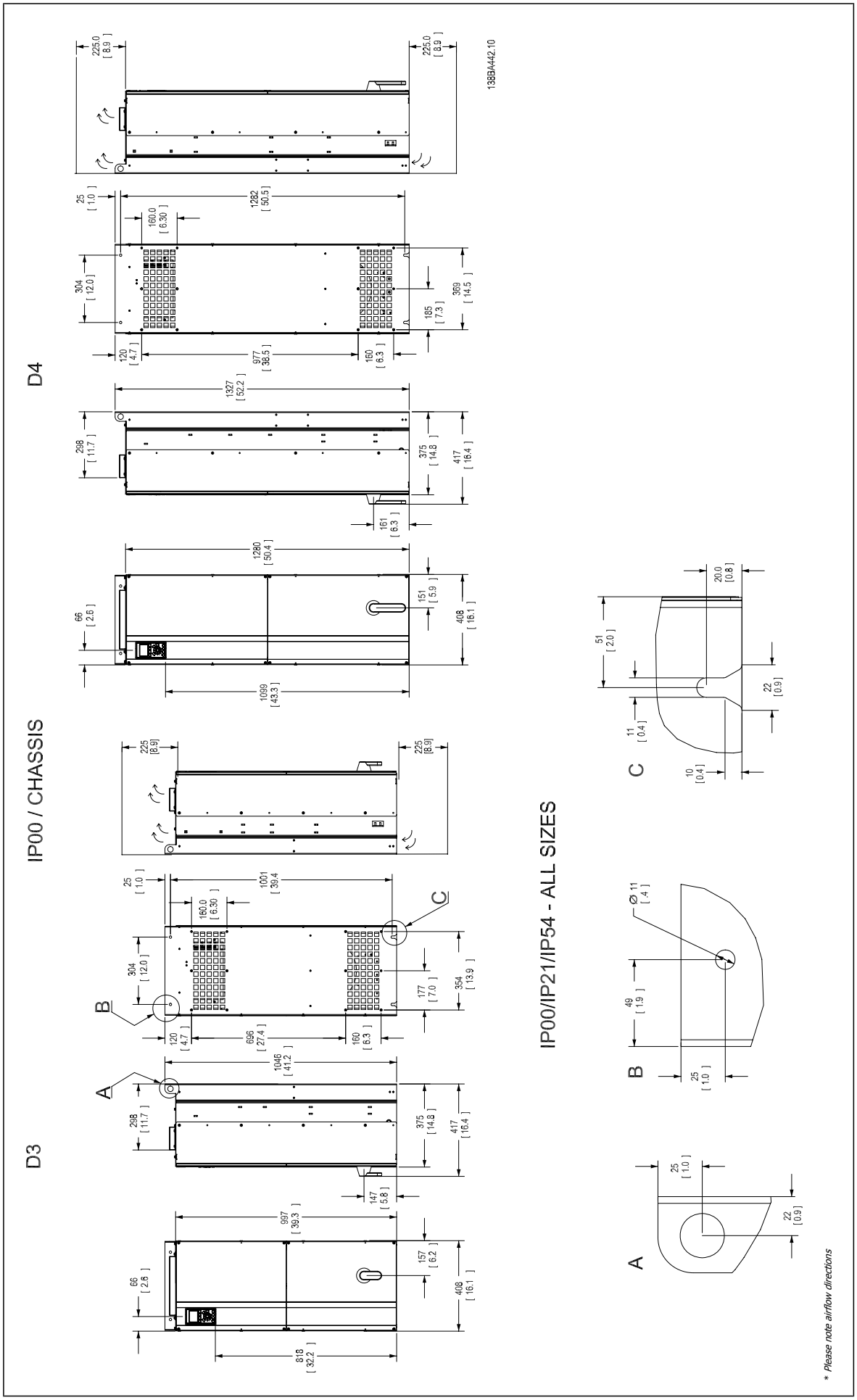
Note the plinth is provided in the same packaging as the frequency converter but is not attached to F1-F4 frames during shipment. The plinth is required to allow airflow to the drive to provide proper cooling. The F frames should be positioned on top of the plinth in the final installation location. The angle from the top of the drive to the lifting cable should be 60 degrees or greater.

3

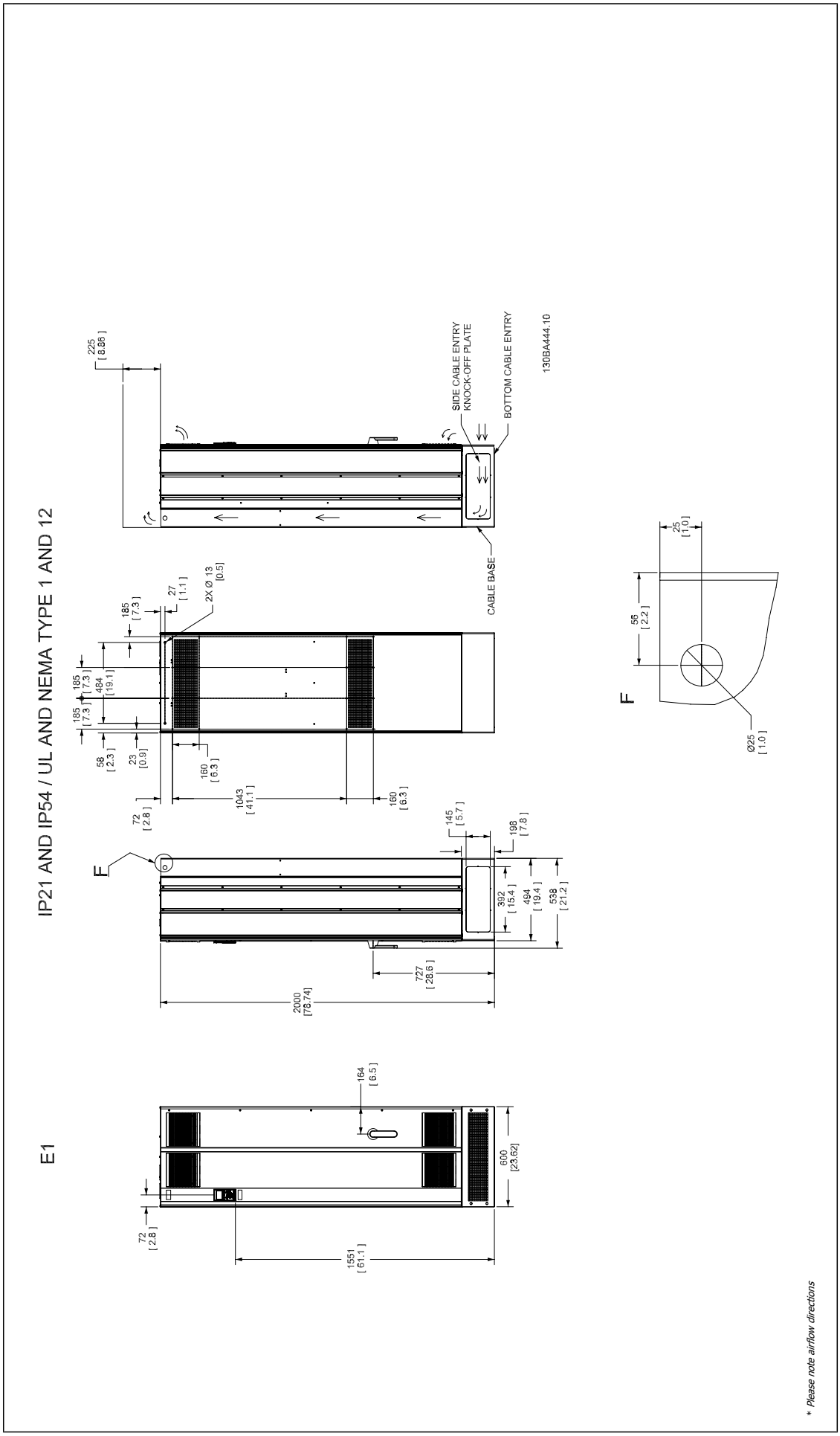
3.2.5 Mechanical Dimensions



3


IP00 / CHASSIS
D4
D3
IP00/IP21/IP54 - ALL SIZES
138BA442.10
* Please note airflow directions

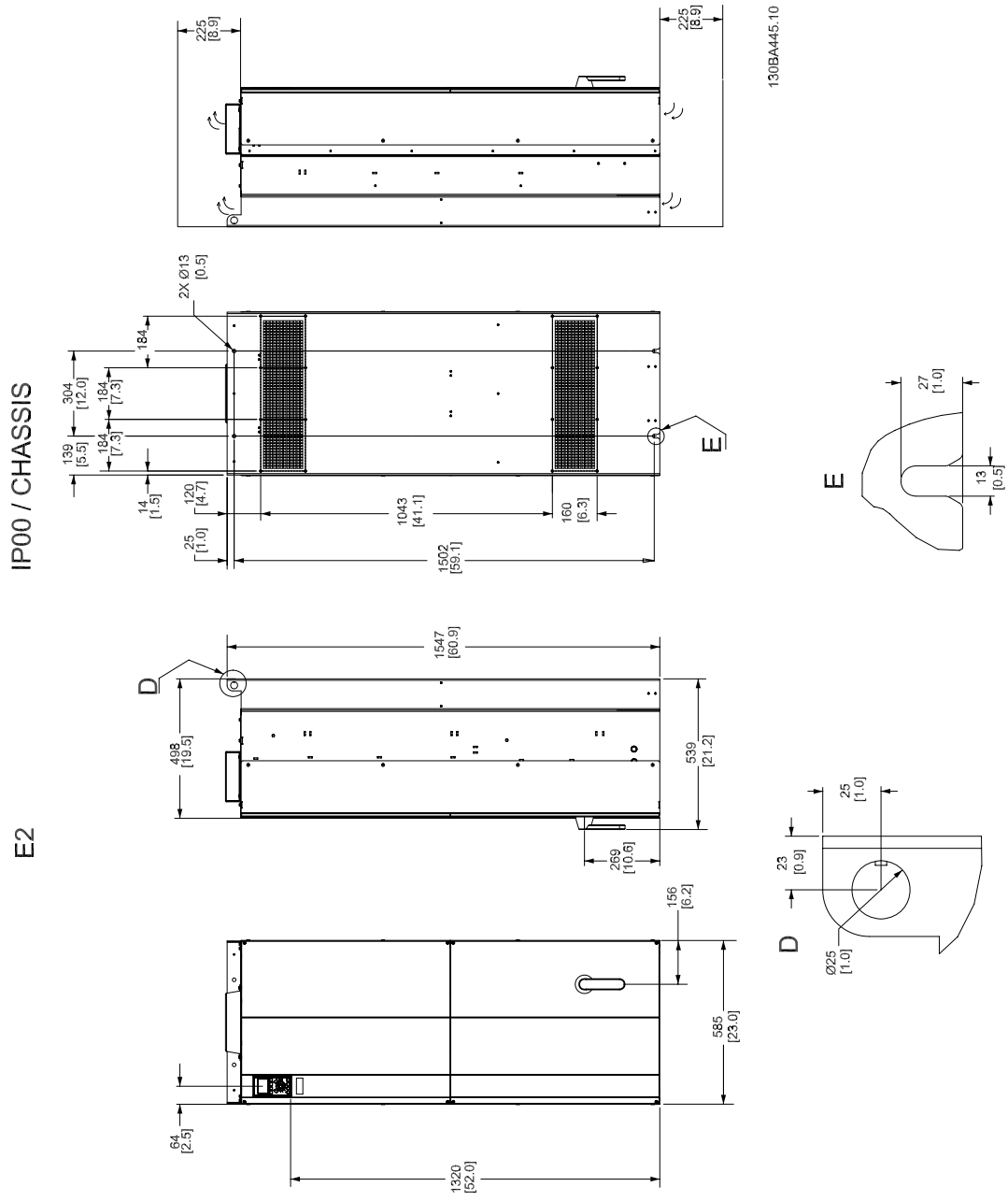
3

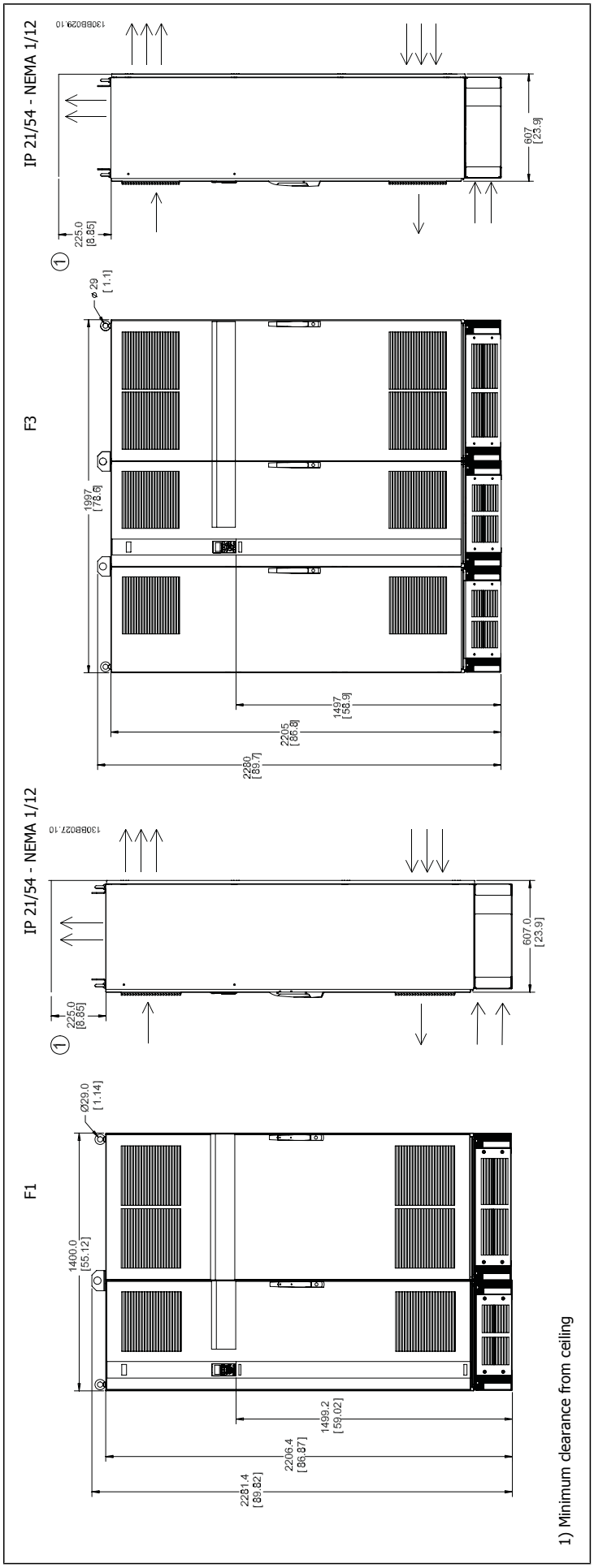

IP21 AND IP54 / UL AND NEMA TYPE 1 AND 12
E1
130BA444.10
SIDE CABLE ENTRY KNOCK-OFF PLATE
BOTTOM CABLE ENTRY
CABLE BASE
225 [8.86]
185 [7.3]
27 [1.1]
2X Ø 13 [0.5]
185 [7.3]
484 [19.1]
185 [7.3]
58 [2.3]
23 [0.9]
160 [6.3]
1043 [41.1]
160 [6.3]
72 [2.8]
145 [5.7]
198 [7.8]
392 [15.4]
494 [19.4]
538 [21.2]
727 [28.6]
2000 [78.74]
164 [6.5]
600 [23.62]
72 [2.8]
1551 [61.1]
F
25 [1.0]
56 [2.2]
Ø25 [1.0]
F
* Please note airflow directions

3

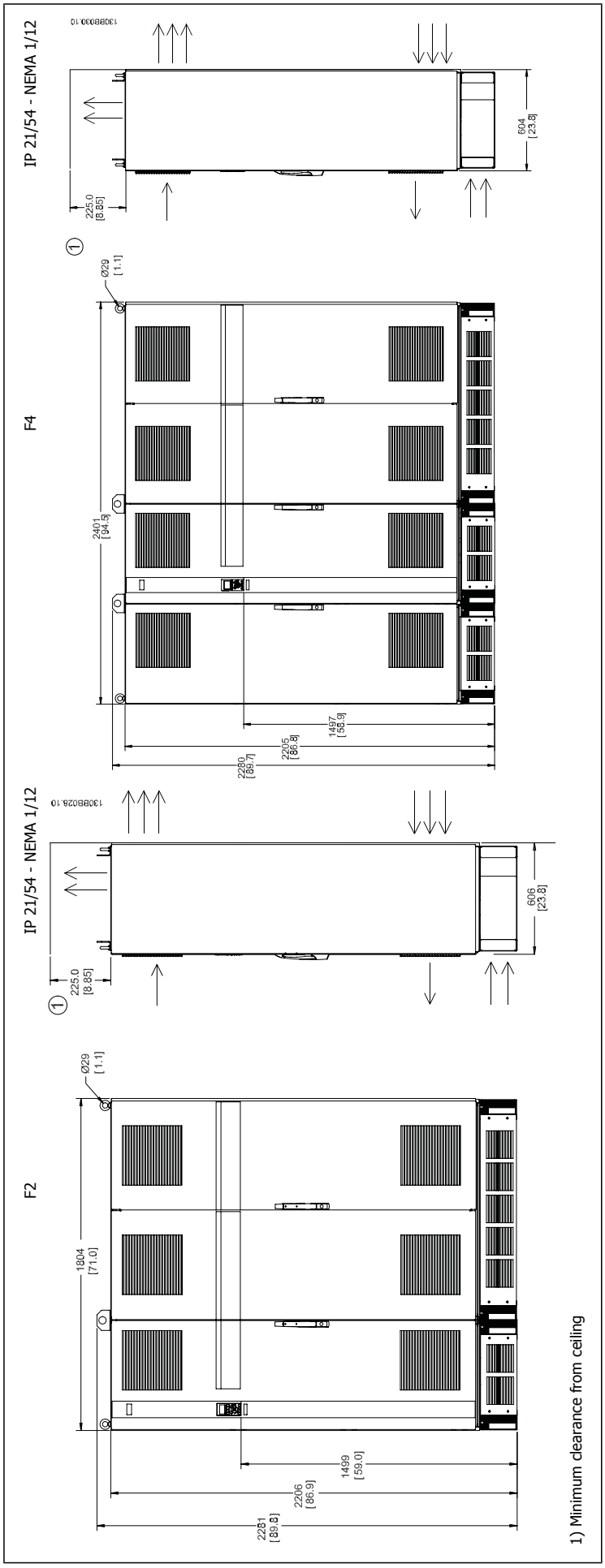
IP00 / CHASSIS

E2




IP 21/54 - NEMA 1/12
130BB029.10
607 [23.9]
225.0 [8.85]
1
F3
ø 29 [1.1]
1997 [78.6]
1497 [58.9]
2215 [86.8]
2280 [89.7]
IP 21/54 - NEMA 1/12
130BB027.10
607.0 [23.9]
225.0 [8.85]
1
F1
Ø29.0 [1.14]
1400.0 [55.12]
1499.2 [59.02]
2206.4 [86.87]
2281.4 [89.82]
1) Minimum clearance from ceiling

3



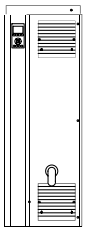
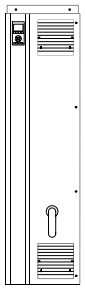
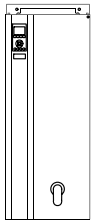
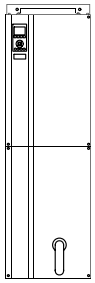
Mechanical dimensions , Frame size D

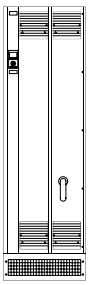
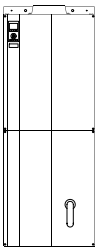
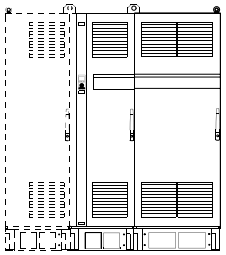
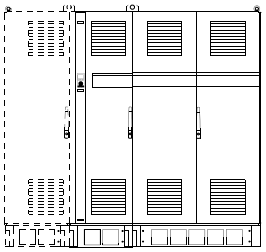
Frame size		D1		D2		D3	D4
		110 - 132 kW at 400 V (380 - 480 V) 45 - 160 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)		150 - 250 kW at 400 V (380 - 480 V) 200 - 400 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)		110 - 132 kW at 400 V (380 - 480 V) 45 - 160 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)	150 - 250 kW at 400 V (380 - 480 V) 200 - 400 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)
IP NEMA		21 Type 1	54 Type 12	21 Type 1	54 Type 12	00 Chassis	00 Chassis
Shipping dimensions	Height	650 mm	650 mm	650 mm	650 mm	650 mm	650 mm
	Width	1730 mm	1730 mm	1730 mm	1730 mm	1220 mm	1490 mm
	Depth	570 mm	570 mm	570 mm	570 mm	570 mm	570 mm
Drive dimensions	Height	1209 mm	1209 mm	1589 mm	1589 mm	1046 mm	1327 mm
	Width	420 mm	420 mm	420 mm	420 mm	408 mm	408 mm
	Depth	380 mm	380 mm	380 mm	380 mm	375 mm	375 mm
	Max weight	104 kg	104 kg	151 kg	151 kg	91 kg	138 kg

Mechanical dimensions, frame size E and F

Frame size		E1	E2	F1	F2	F3	F4
		315 - 450 kW at 400 V (380 - 480 V) 450 - 630 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)	315 - 450 kW at 400 V (380 - 480 V) 450 - 630 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)	500 - 710 kW at 400 V (380 - 500 V) 710 - 900 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)	800 - 1000 kW at 400 V (380 - 500 V) 1000 - 1200 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)	500 - 710 kW at 400 V (380 - 500 V) 710 - 900 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)	800 - 1000 kW at 400 V (380 - 500 V) 1000 - 1200 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)
IP NEMA		21, 54 Type 1/ Type 12	00 Chassis	21, 54 Type 1/ Type 12	21, 54 Type 1/ Type 12	21, 54 Type 1/ Type 12	21, 54 Type 1/ Type 12
Shipping dimensions	Height	840 mm	831 mm	2324 mm	2324 mm	2324 mm	2324 mm
	Width	2197 mm	1705 mm	1569 mm	1962 mm	2159 mm	2559 mm
	Depth	736 mm	736 mm	927 mm	927 mm	927 mm	927 mm
Drive dimensions	Height	2000 mm	1547 mm	2204	2204	2204	2204
	Width	600 mm	585 mm	1400	1800	2000	2400
	Depth	494 mm	498 mm	606	606	606	606
	Max weight	313 kg	277 kg	1004	1246	1299	1541

3.2.6 Rated Power

		D1	D2	D3	D4
Frame size		 130BA481.10	 130BA482.10	 130BA478.10	 130BA479.10
Enclosure protection	IP	21/54	21/54	00	00
	NEMA	Type 1/ Type 12	Type 1/ Type 12	Chassis	Chassis
High overload rated power - 160% overload torque		110 - 132 kW at 400 V (380 - 480 V) 45 - 160 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)	150 - 250 kW at 400 V (380 - 480 V) 200 - 400 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)	110 - 132 kW at 400 V (380 - 480 V) 45 - 160 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)	150 - 250 kW at 400 V (380 - 480 V) 200 - 400 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)

		E1	E2	F1/F3	F2/F4
Frame size		 130BA483.10	 130BA480.10	 130BA855.10	 130BA854.10
Enclosure protection	IP	21/54	00	21/54	21/54
	NEMA	Type 1/ Type 12	Chassis	Type 1/ Type 12	Type 1/ Type 12
High overload rated power - 160% overload torque		315 - 450 kW at 400 V (380 - 480 V) 450 - 630 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)	315 - 450 kW at 400 V (380 - 480 V) 450 - 630 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)	500 - 710 kW at 400 V (380 - 500 V) 710 - 900 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)	800 - 1000 kW at 400 V (380 - 500 V) 1000 - 1200 kW at 690 V (525-690 V)

NB!

The F frames have four different sizes, F1, F2, F3 and F4 The F1 and F2 consist of an inverter cabinet on the right and rectifier cabinet on the left. The F3 and F4 have an additional options cabinet left of the rectifier cabinet. The F3 is an F1 with an additional options cabinet. The F4 is an F2 with an additional options cabinet.

3.3 Mechanical Installation

Preparation of the mechanical installation of the frequency converter must be done carefully to ensure a proper result and to avoid additional work during installation. Start taking a close look at the mechanical drawings at the end of this instruction to become familiar with the space demands.

3.3.1 Tools Needed

To perform the mechanical installation the following tools are needed:

- Drill with 10 or 12 mm drill
- Tape measure
- Wrench with relevant metric sockets (7-17 mm)
- Extensions to wrench
- Sheet metal punch for conduits or cable glands in IP 21/Nema 1 and IP 54 units
- Lifting bar to lift the unit (rod or tube max. Ø 25 mm (1 inch), able to lift minimum 400 kg (880 lbs)).
- Crane or other lifting aid to place the frequency converter in position
- A Torx T50 tool is needed to install the E1 in IP21 and IP54 enclosure types.

3.3.2 General Considerations

Space

Ensure proper space above and below the frequency converter to allow airflow and cable access. In addition space in front of the unit must be considered to enable opening of the door of the panel.

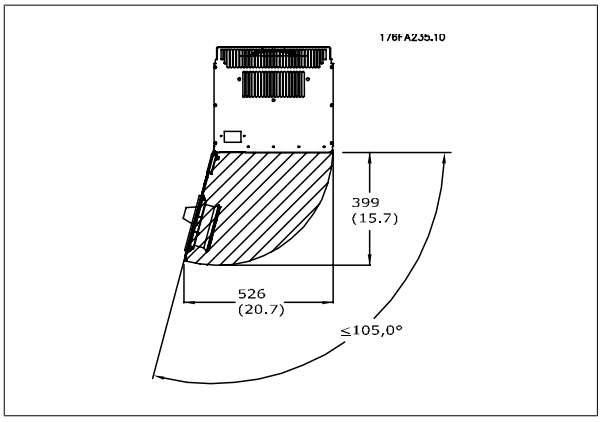


Illustration 3.8: Space in front of IP21/IP54 enclosure type, frame size D1 and D2 .

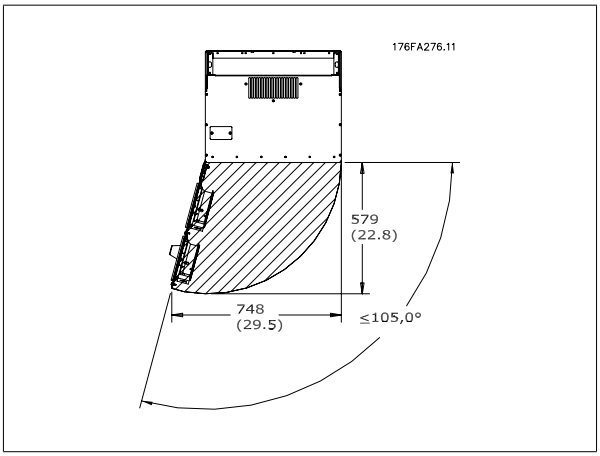


Illustration 3.9: Space in front of IP21/IP54 enclosure type, frame size E1.

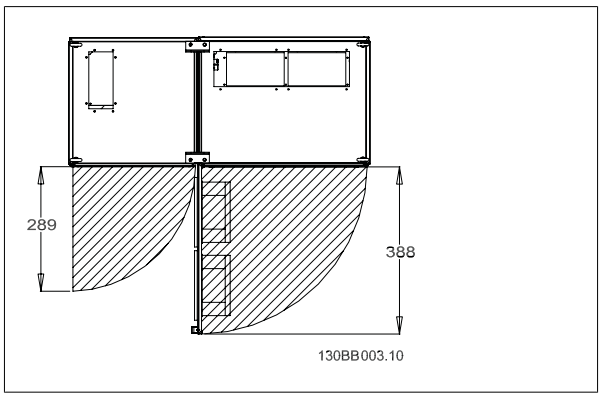


Illustration 3.10: Space in front of IP21/IP54 enclosure type, frame size F1.

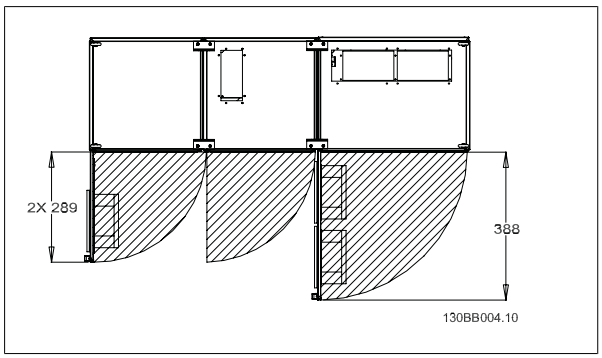


Illustration 3.11: Space in front of IP21/IP54 enclosure type, frame size F3.

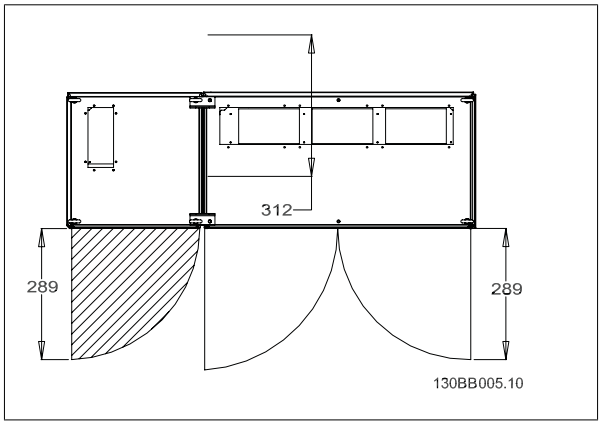


Illustration 3.12: Space in front of IP21/IP54 enclosure type, frame size F2.

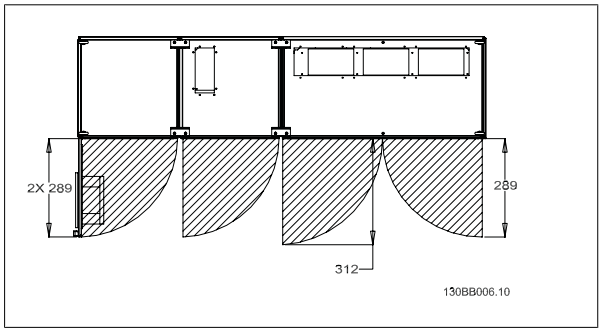


Illustration 3.13: Space in front of IP21/IP54 enclosure type, frame size F4.

NB!
Airflow direction, see *Mechanical Dimensions* on previous pages

Wire access

Ensure that proper cable access is present including necessary bending allowance. As the IP00 enclosure is open to the bottom cables must be fixed to the back panel of the enclosure where the frequency converter is mounted, i.e. by using cable clamps.

NB!
All cable lugs/ shoes must mount within the width of the terminal bus bar

3.3.3 Terminal locations - frame size D

Take the following position of the terminals into consideration when you design for cables access.

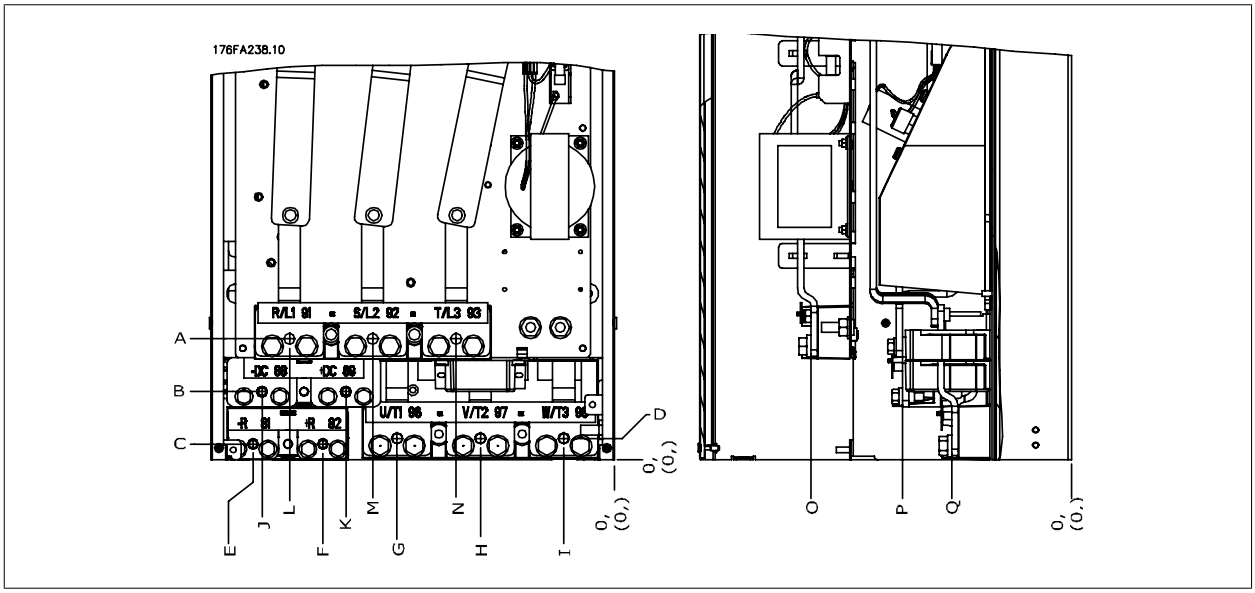


Illustration 3.14: Position of power connections, frame size D3 and D4

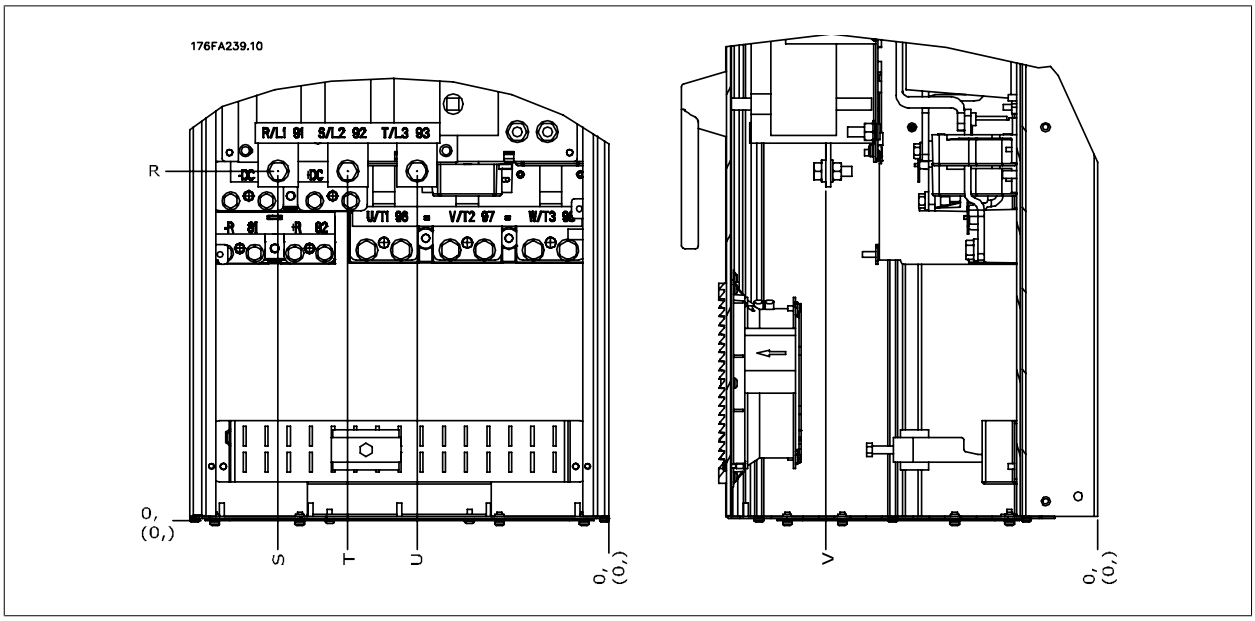


Illustration 3.15: Position of power connections with disconnect switch, frame size D1 and D2

Be aware that the power cables are heavy and hard to bend. Consider the optimum position of the frequency converter for ensuring easy installation of the cables.

NB!
All D frames are available with standard input terminals or disconnect switch. All terminal dimensions can be found in table on next page.

	IP 21 (NEMA 1) / IP 54 (NEMA 12)		IP 00 / Chassis	
	Frame size D1	**Frame size D2**	**Frame size D3**	**Frame size D4**
A	277 (10.9)	379 (14.9)	119 (4.7)	122 (4.8)
B	227 (8.9)	326 (12.8)	68 (2.7)	68 (2.7)
C	173 (6.8)	273 (10.8)	15 (0.6)	16 (0.6)
D	179 (7.0)	279 (11.0)	20.7 (0.8)	22 (0.8)
E	370 (14.6)	370 (14.6)	363 (14.3)	363 (14.3)
F	300 (11.8)	300 (11.8)	293 (11.5)	293 (11.5)
G	222 (8.7)	226 (8.9)	215 (8.4)	218 (8.6)
H	139 (5.4)	142 (5.6)	131 (5.2)	135 (5.3)
I	55 (2.2)	59 (2.3)	48 (1.9)	51 (2.0)
J	354 (13.9)	361 (14.2)	347 (13.6)	354 (13.9)
K	284 (11.2)	277 (10.9)	277 (10.9)	270 (10.6)
L	334 (13.1)	334 (13.1)	326 (12.8)	326 (12.8)
M	250 (9.8)	250 (9.8)	243 (9.6)	243 (9.6)
N	167 (6.6)	167 (6.6)	159 (6.3)	159 (6.3)
O	261 (10.3)	260 (10.3)	261 (10.3)	261 (10.3)
P	170 (6.7)	169 (6.7)	170 (6.7)	170 (6.7)
Q	120 (4.7)	120 (4.7)	120 (4.7)	120 (4.7)
R	256 (10.1)	350 (13.8)	98 (3.8)	93 (3.7)
S	308 (12.1)	332 (13.0)	301 (11.8)	324 (12.8)
T	252 (9.9)	262 (10.3)	245 (9.6)	255 (10.0)
U	196 (7.7)	192 (7.6)	189 (7.4)	185 (7.3)
V	260 (10.2)	273 (10.7)	260 (10.2)	273 (10.7)

Table 3.1: Cable positions as shown in drawings above. Dimensions in mm (inch).

3.3.4 Terminal Locations - frame size E

Terminal locations - E1

Take the following position of the terminals into consideration when designing the cable access.

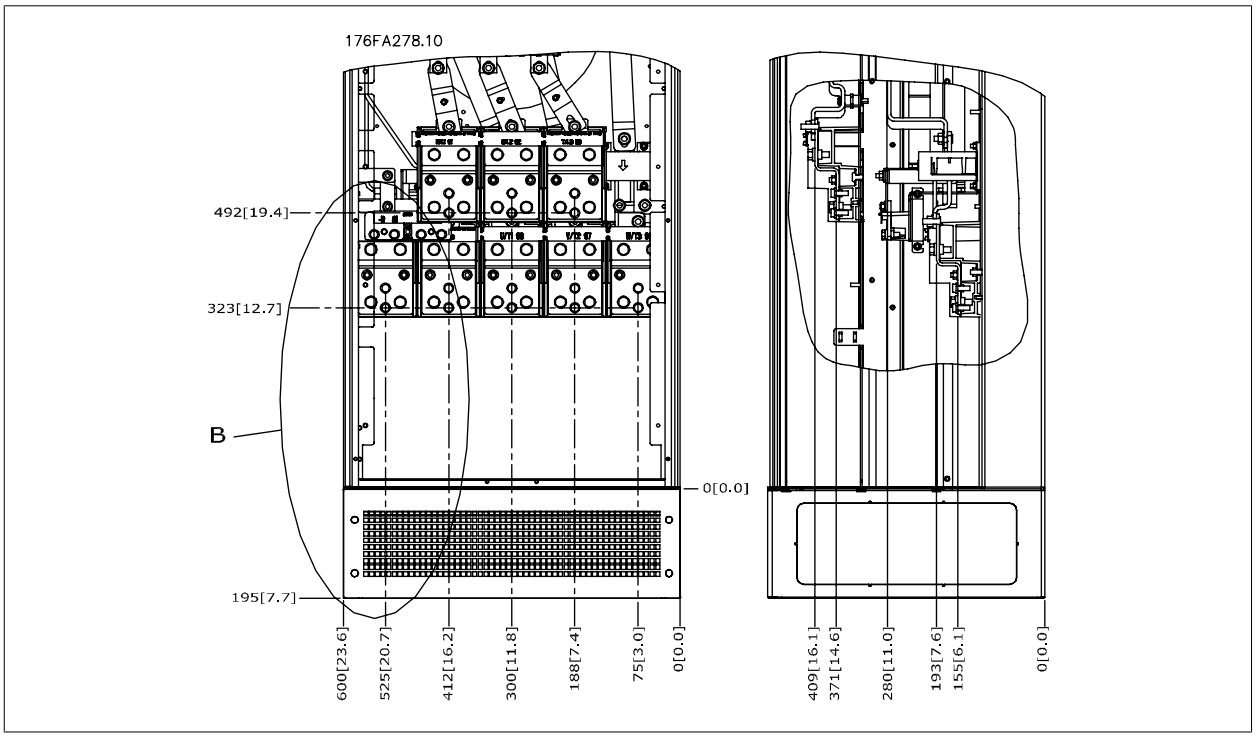


Illustration 3.16: IP21 (NEMA Type 1) and IP54 (NEMA Type 12) enclosure power connection positions

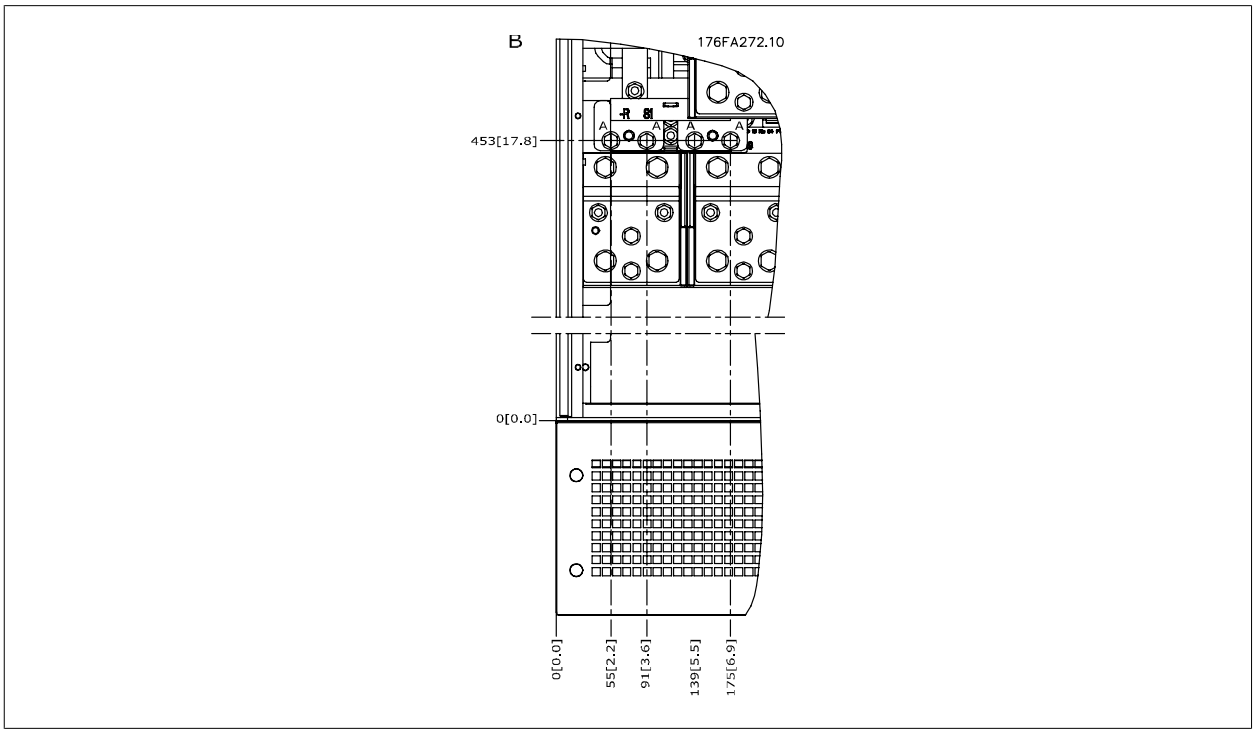


Illustration 3.17: IP21 (NEMA type 1) and IP54 (NEMA type 12) enclosure power connection positions (detail B)

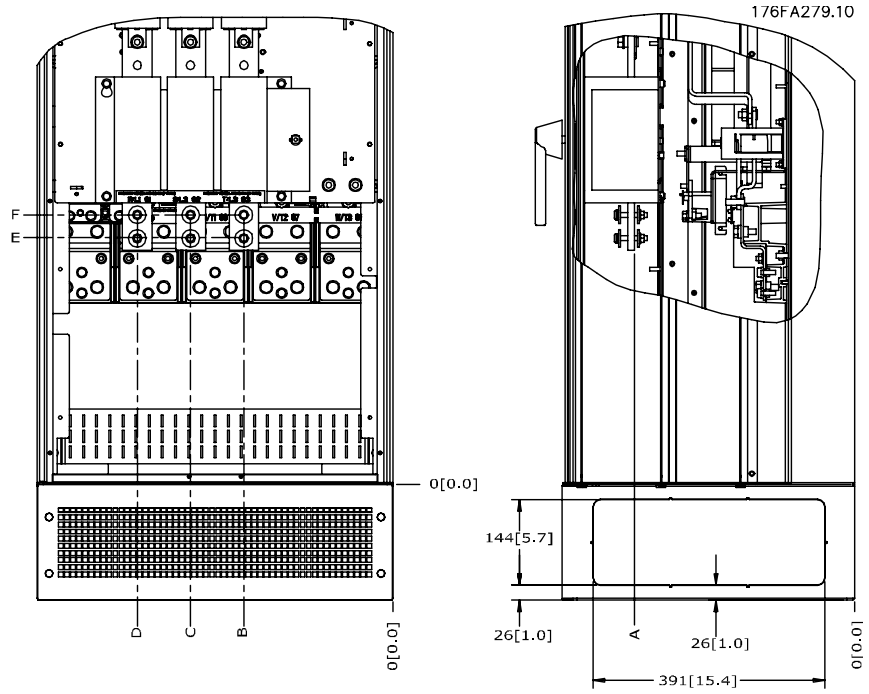


Illustration 3.18: IP21 (NEMA type 1) and IP54 (NEMA type 12) enclosure power connection position of disconnect switch

Frame size	UNIT TYPE	DIMENSION FOR DISCONNECT TERMINAL					
	IP54/IP21 UL AND NEMA1/NEMA12						
E1	250/315 kW (400V) AND 355/450-500/630 KW (690 V)	381 (15.0)	253 (9.9)	253 (9.9)	431 (17.0)	562 (22.1)	N/A
	315/355-400/450 kW (400V)	371 (14.6)	371 (14.6)	341 (13.4)	431 (17.0)	431 (17.0)	455 (17.9)

Terminal locations - E2

Take the following position of the terminals into consideration when designing the cable access.

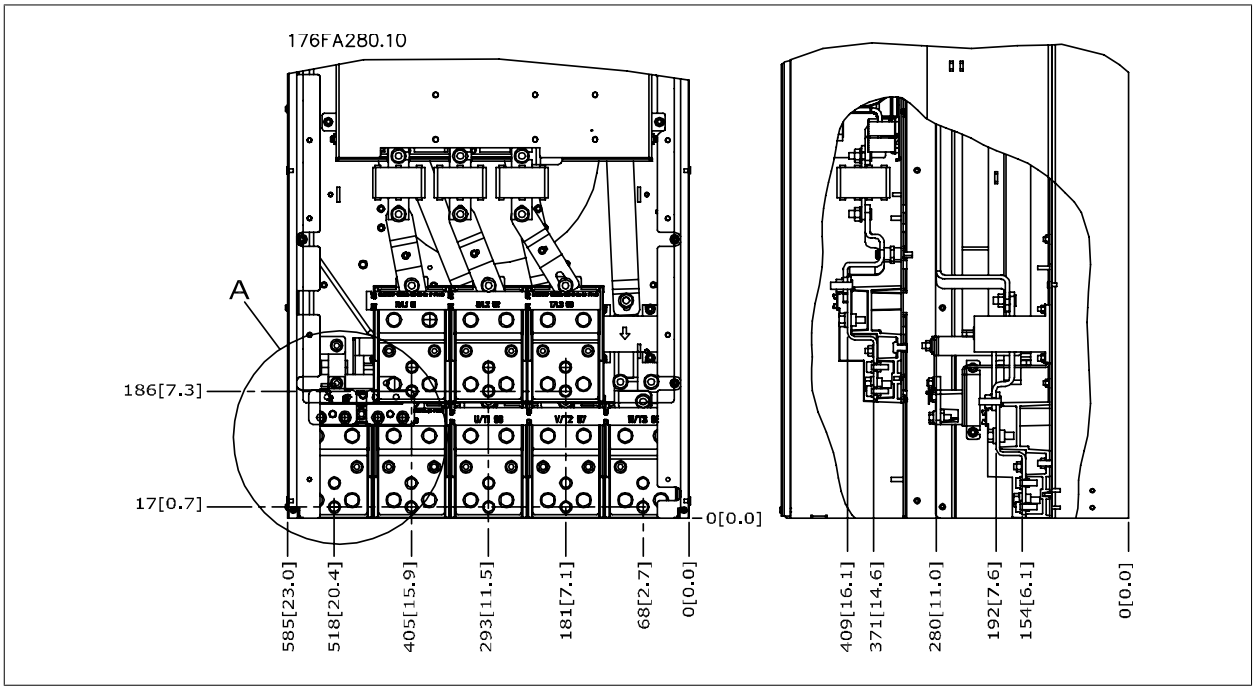


Illustration 3.19: IP00 enclosure power connection positions

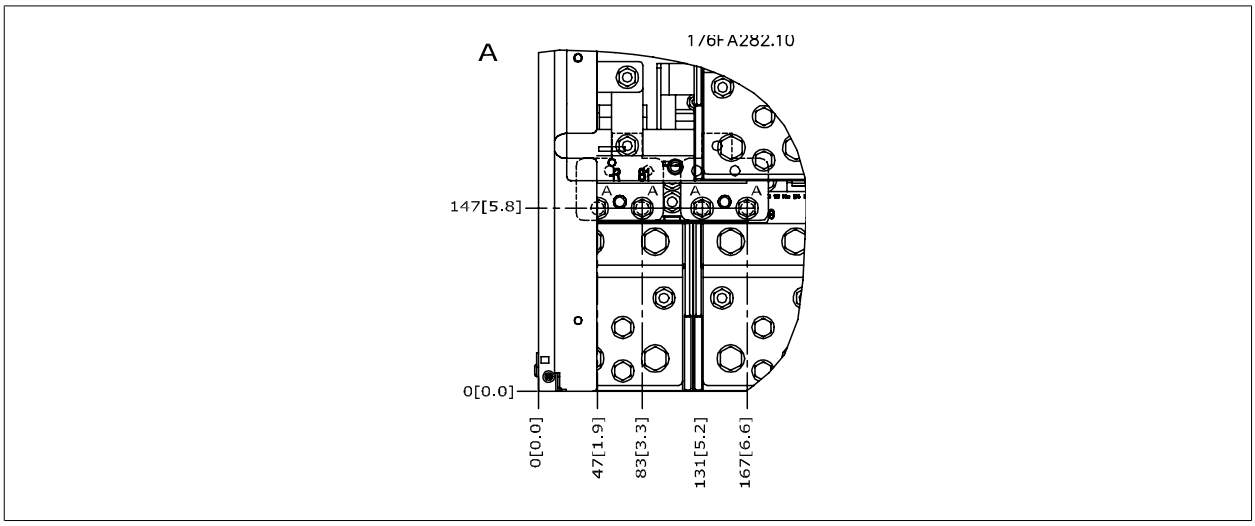


Illustration 3.20: IP00 enclosure power connection positions

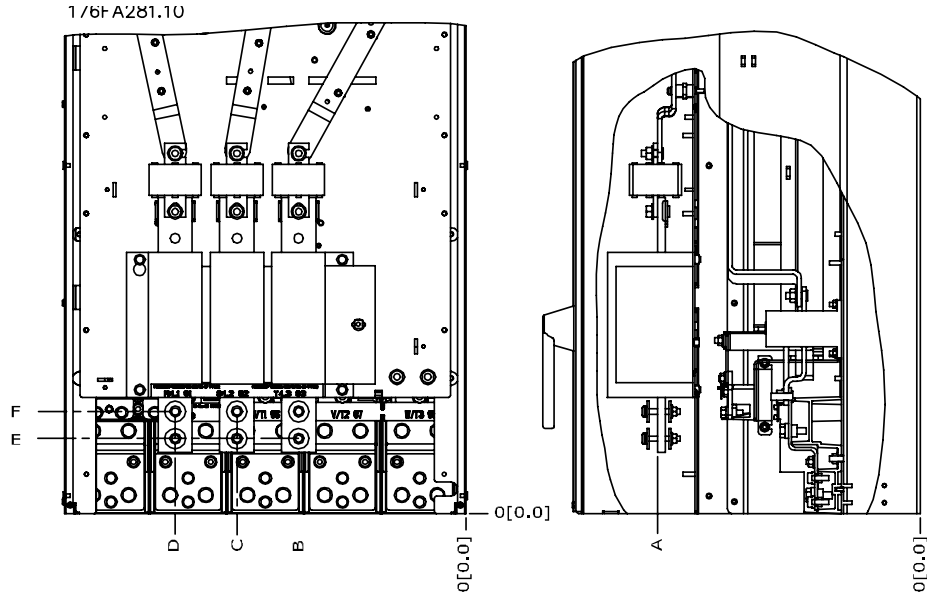


Illustration 3.21: IP00 enclosure power connections positions of disconnect switch

Note that the power cables are heavy and difficult to bend. Consider the optimum position of the frequency converter for ensuring easy installation of the cables.
Each terminal allows use of up to 4 cables with cable lugs or use of standard box lug. Earth is connected to relevant termination point in the drive.

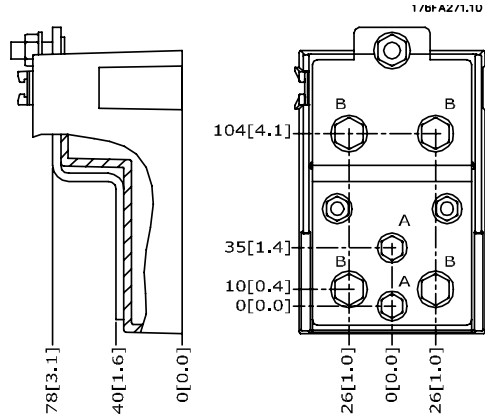


Illustration 3.22: Terminal in details

NB!
Power connections can be made to positions A or B

Frame size	UNIT TYPE	DIMENSION FOR DISCONNECT TERMINAL					
	IPOO/CHASSIS	A	B	C	D	E	F
E2	250/315 kW (400V) AND 355/450-500/630 KW (690 V)	381 (15.0)	245 (9.6)	334 (13.1)	423 (16.7)	256 (10.1)	N/A
	315/355-400/450 kW (400V)	383 (15.1)	244 (9.6)	334 (13.1)	424 (16.7)	109 (4.3)	149 (5.8)

3.3.5 Terminal Locations - frame size F

NB!

The F frames have four different sizes, F1, F2, F3 and F4. The F1 and F2 consist of an inverter cabinet on the right and rectifier cabinet on the left. The F3 and F4 have an additional options cabinet left of the rectifier cabinet. The F3 is an F1 with an additional options cabinet. The F4 is an F2 with an additional options cabinet.

Terminal locations - frame size F1 and F3

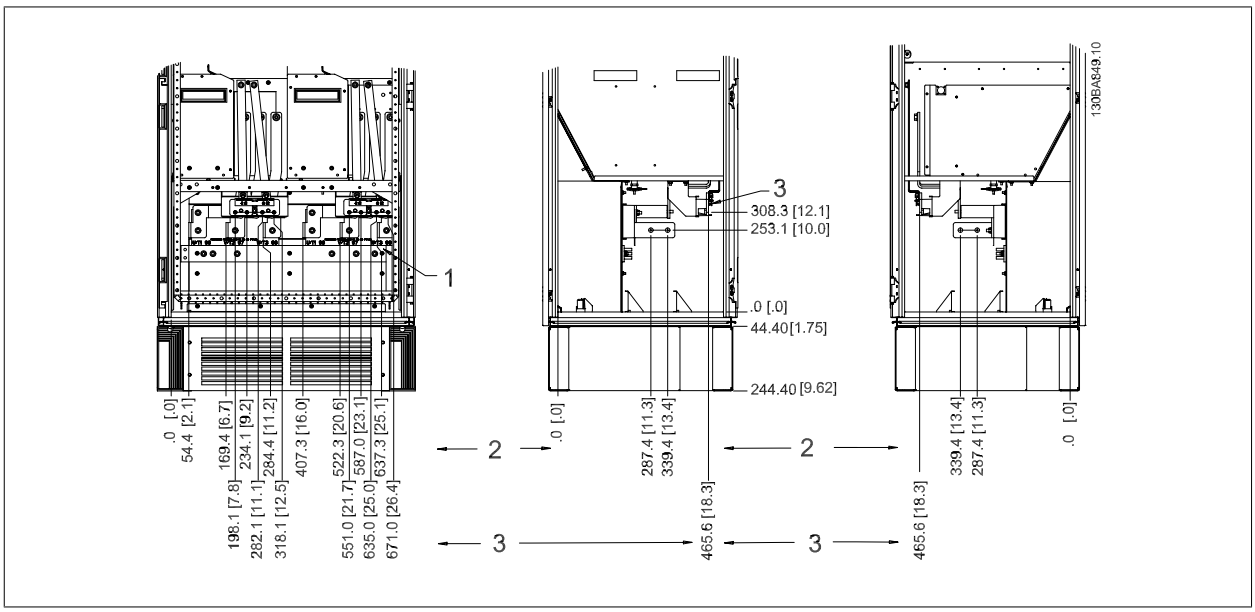


Illustration 3.23: Terminal locations - Inverter Cabinet - F1 and F3 (front, left and right side view)

1) Earth ground bar

2) Motor terminals

3) Brake terminals

Terminal locations - frame size F2 and F4

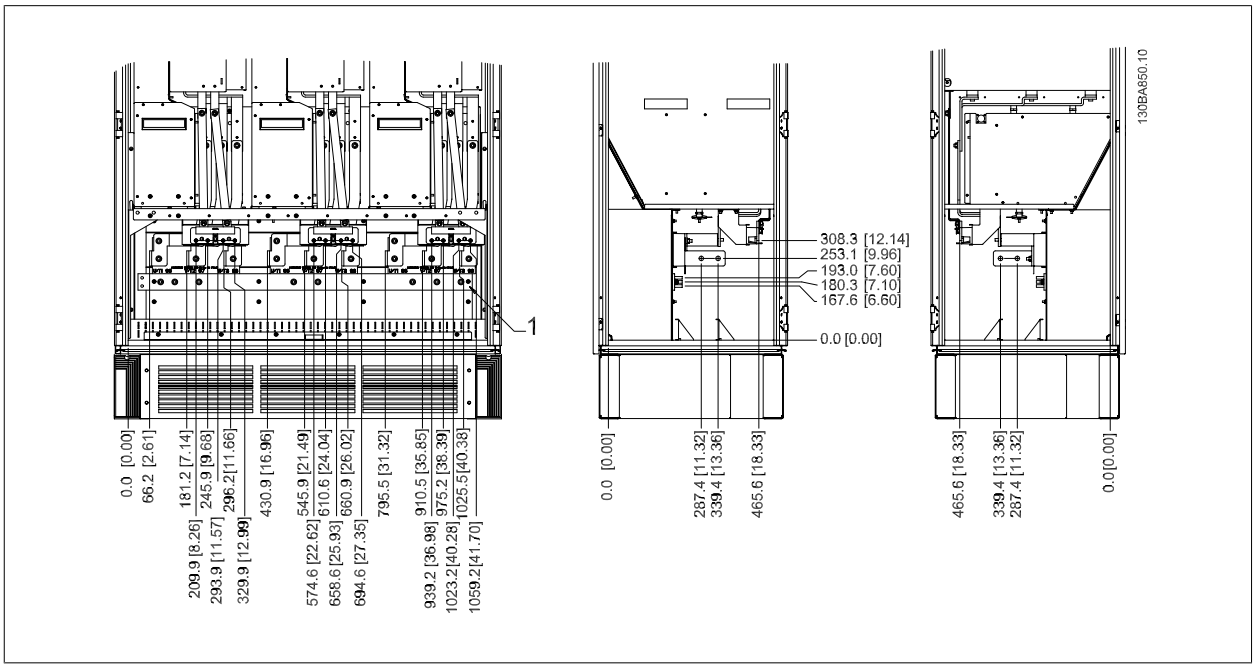


Illustration 3.24: Terminal locations - Inverter Cabinet - F2 and F4 (front, left and right side view)

1) Earth ground bar

3

Terminal locations - Rectifier (F1, F2, F3 and F4)

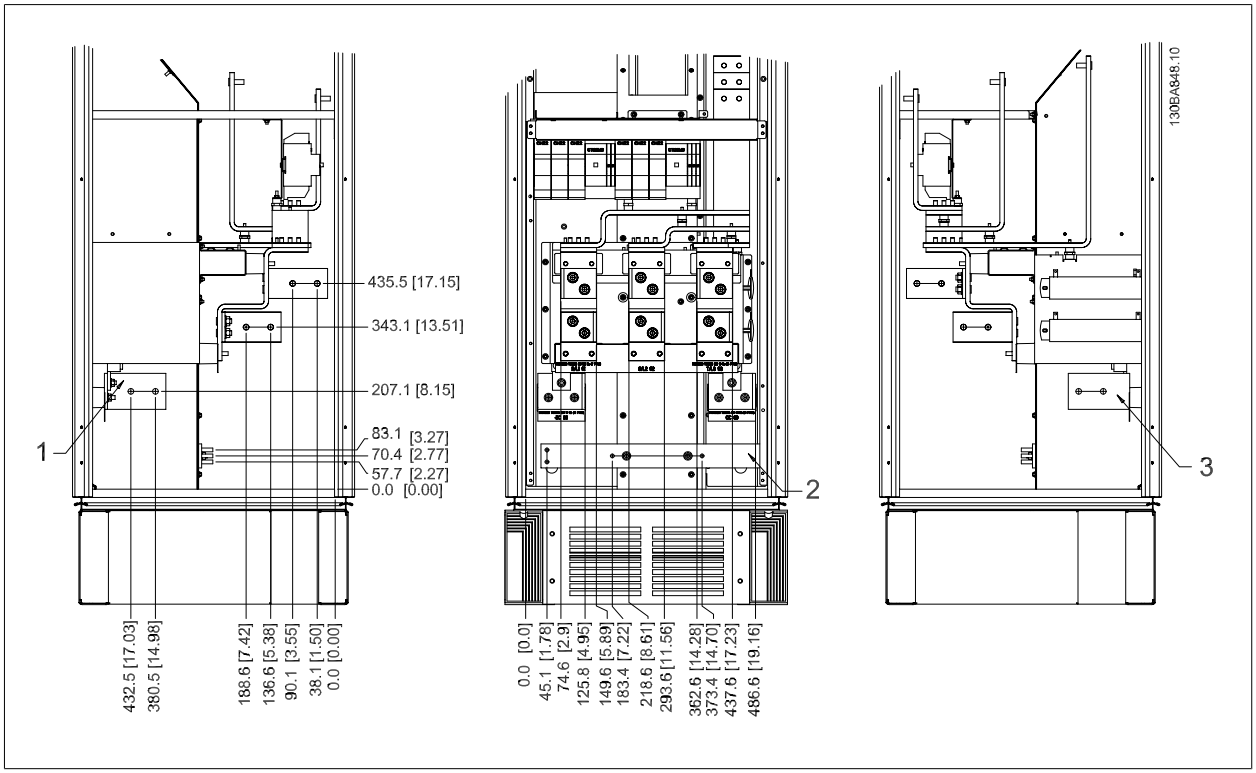


Illustration 3.25: Terminal locations - Rectifier (Left side, front and right side view)

1) Loadshare Terminal (-)

2) Earth ground bar

3) Loadshare Terminal (+)

Terminal locations - Options Cabinet (F3 and F4)

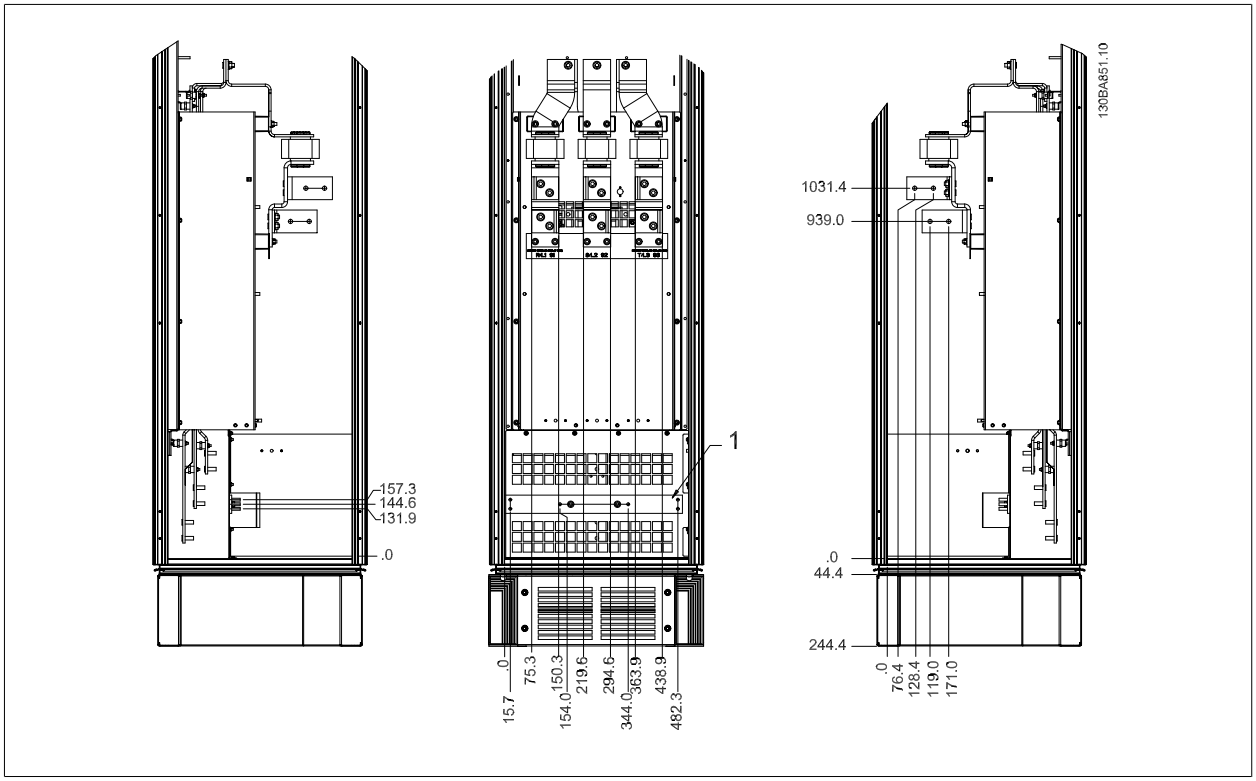


Illustration 3.26: Terminal locations - Options Cabinet (Left side, front and right side view)

1) Earth ground bar

Terminal locations - Options Cabinet with circuit breaker/ molded case switch (F3 and F4)

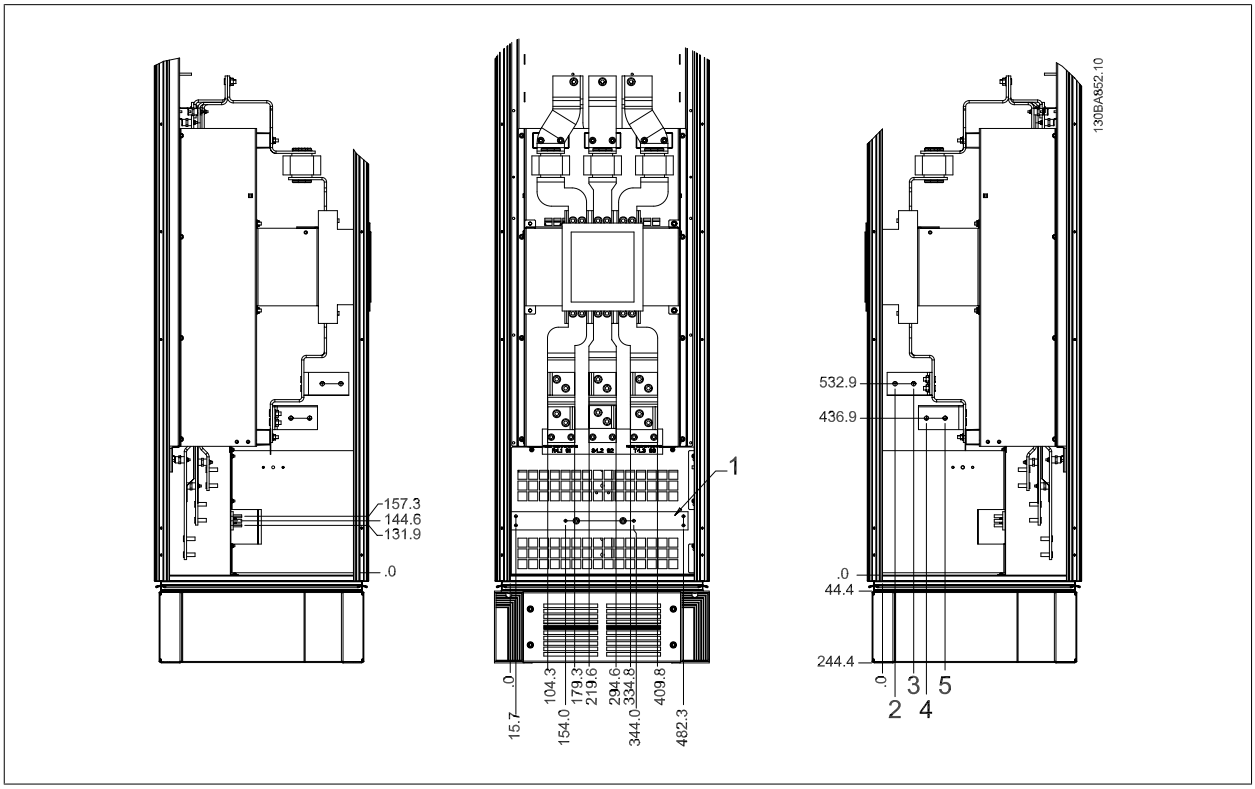


Illustration 3.27: Terminal locations - Options Cabinet with circuit breaker/ molded case switch (Left side, front and right side view)
1) Earth ground bar

3.3.6 Cooling and Airflow

Cooling

Cooling can be obtained in different ways, by using the cooling ducts in the bottom and the top of the unit, by taking air in and out the back of the unit or by combining the cooling possibilities.

Duct cooling

A dedicated option has been developed to optimize installation of IP00/chassis frame frequency converters in Rittal TS8 enclosures utilizing the fan of the frequency converter for forced air cooling of the backchannel. The air out the top of the enclosure could but ducted outside a facility so the heat loses from the backchannel are not dissipated within the control room reducing air-conditioning requirements of the facility.
Please see *Installation of Duct Cooling Kit in Rittal enclosures*, for further information.

Back cooling

The backchannel air can also be ventilated in and out the back of a Rittal TS8 enclosure. This offers a solution where the backchannel could take air from outside the facility and return the heat loses outside the facility thus reducing air-conditioning requirements.

NB!
A doorfan(s) is required on the Rittal cabinet to remove the loses not contained in the backchannel of the drive. The minimum doorfan(s) airflow required at the drive maximum ambient for the D3 and D4 is 391 m^3/h (230 cfm). The minimum doorfan(s) airflow required at the drive maximum ambient for the E2 is 782 m^3/h (460 cfm). If the ambient is below maximum or if additional components, heat loses, are added within the enclosure a calculation must be made to ensure the proper airflow is provided to cool the inside of the Rittal enclosure.

Airflow

The necessary airflow over the heat sink must be secured. The flow rate is shown below.

Enclosure protection	Frame size	Door fan / Top fan airflow	Airflow over heatsink
IP21 / NEMA 1	D1 and D2	170 m^3/h (100 cfm)	765 m^3/h (450 cfm)
IP54 / NEMA 12	E1	340 m^3/h (200 cfm)	1444 m^3/h (850 cfm)
IP21 / NEMA 1	F1, F2, F3 and F4	700 m^3/h (412 cfm)*	985 m^3/h (580 cfm)
IP54 / NEMA 12	F1, F2, F3 and F4	525 m^3/h (309 cfm)*	985 m^3/h (580 cfm)
IP00 / Chassis	D3 and D4	255 m^3/h (150 cfm)	765 m^3/h (450 cfm)
	E2	255 m^3/h (150 cfm)	1444 m^3/h (850 cfm)
* Airflow per fan. Frame size F contain multiple fans.			

Table 3.2: Heatsink Air Flow

NB!

The fan runs for the following reasons:

1. AMA
2. DC Hold
3. Pre-Mag
4. DC Brake
5. 60% of nominal current is exceeded
6. Specific heatsink temperature exceeded (power size dependent).

Once the fan is started it will run for minimum 10 minutes.

3.3.7 Installation on the Wall - IP21 (NEMA 1) and IP54 (NEMA 12) Units

This only applies to frame sizes D1 and D2 . It must be considered where to install the unit.

Take the relevant points into consideration before you select the final installation site:

- Free space for cooling
- Access to open the door
- Cable entry from the bottom

Mark the mounting holes carefully using the mounting template on the wall and drill the holes as indicated. Ensure proper distance to the floor and the ceiling for cooling. A minimum of 225 mm (8.9 inch) below the frequency converter is needed. Mount the bolts at the bottom and lift the frequency converter up on the bolts. Tilt the frequency converter against the wall and mount the upper bolts. Tighten all four bolts to secure the frequency converter against the wall.

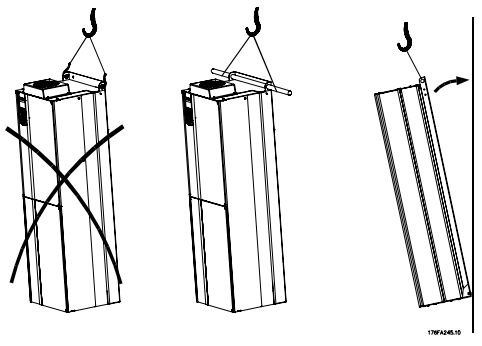
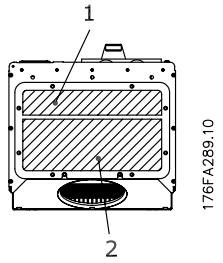


Illustration 3.28: Lifting method for mounting drive on wall

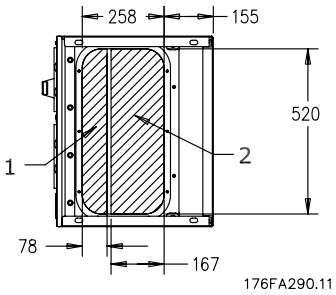
3.3.8 Gland/Conduit Entry - IP21 (NEMA 1) and IP54 (NEMA12)

Cables are connected through the gland plate from the bottom. Remove the plate and plan where to place the entry for the glands or conduits. Prepare holes in the marked area on the drawing.
The gland plate must be fitted to the frequency converter to ensure the specified protection degree, as well as ensuring proper cooling of the unit. If the gland plate is not mounted, it may trip the unit.

Frame size D1 + D2



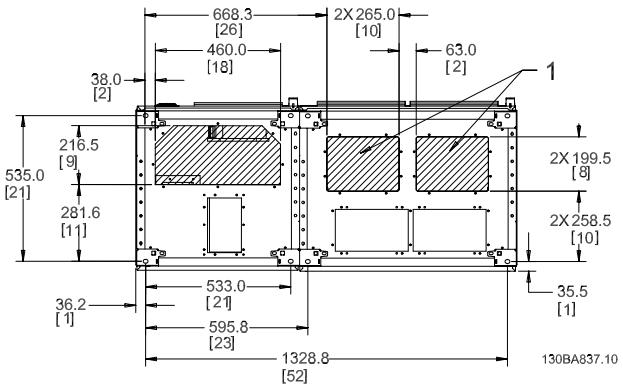
Frame size E1



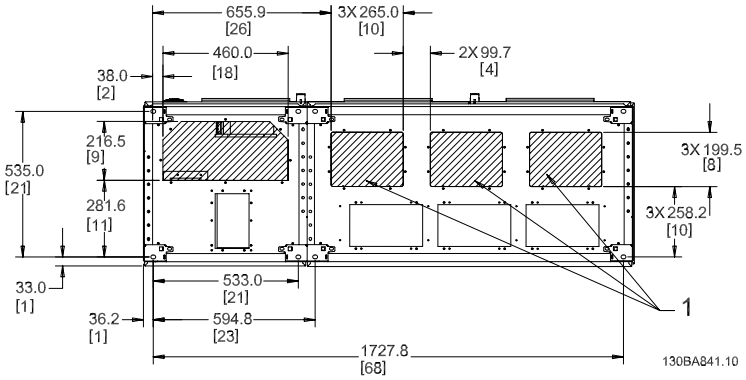
Cable entries viewed from the bottom of the frequency converter - 1) Mains side 2) Motor side

3

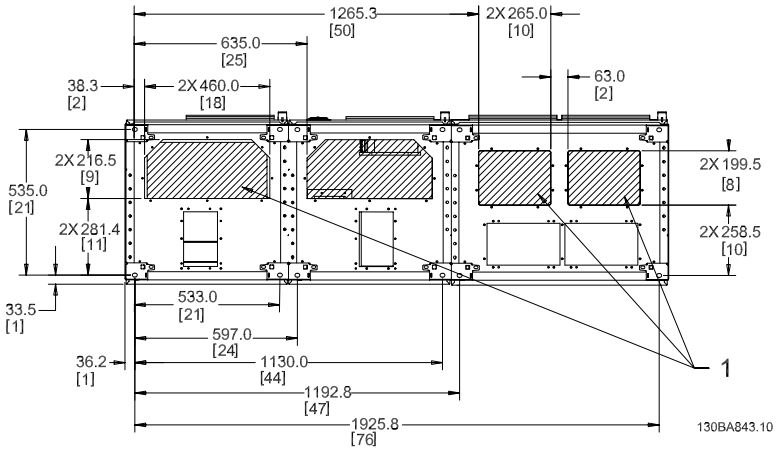
Frame size F1



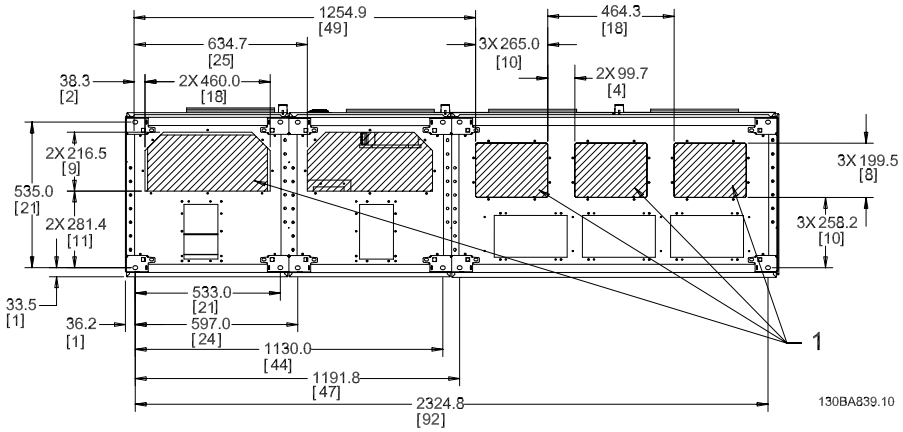
Frame size F2



Frame size F3



Frame size F4



F1-F4: Cable entries viewed from the bottom of the frequency converter - 1) Place conduits in marked areas

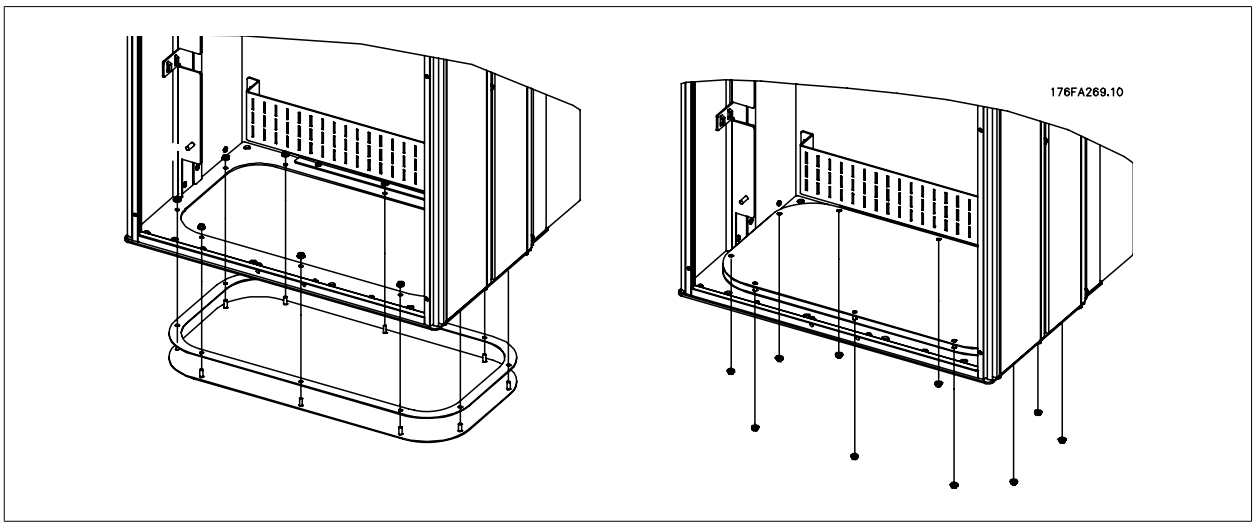


Illustration 3.29: Mounting of bottom plate,Frame size E1.

The bottom plate of the E1 frame can be mounted from either in- or outside of the enclosure, allowing flexibility in the installation process, i.e. if mounted from the bottom the glands and cables can be mounted before the frequency converter is placed on the pedestal.

3.3.9 IP21 Drip shield installation (frame size D1 and D2)

To comply with the IP21 rating, a separate drip shield is to be installed as explained below:

- Remove the two front screws
- Insert the drip shield and replace screws
- Torque the screws to 5,6 Nm (50 in-lbs)

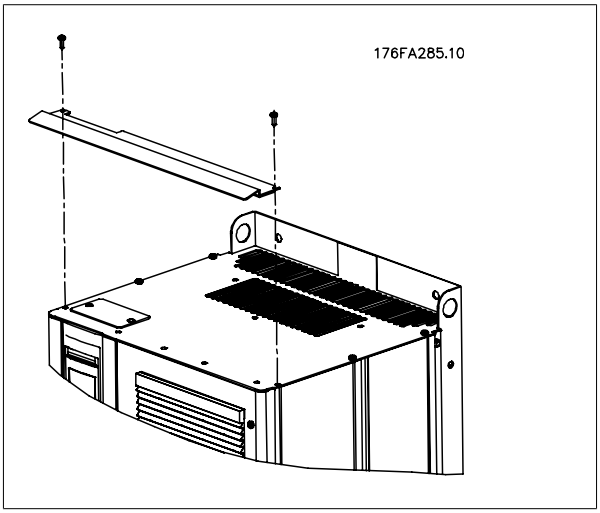


Illustration 3.30: Drip shield installation.

3.4 Field Installation of Options

3.4.1 Installation of Duct Cooling Kit in Rittal Enclosures

This section deals with the installation of IP00 / chassis enclosed frequency converters with duct work cooling kits in Rittal enclosures. In addition to the enclosure a 200 mm base/plinth is required.

3

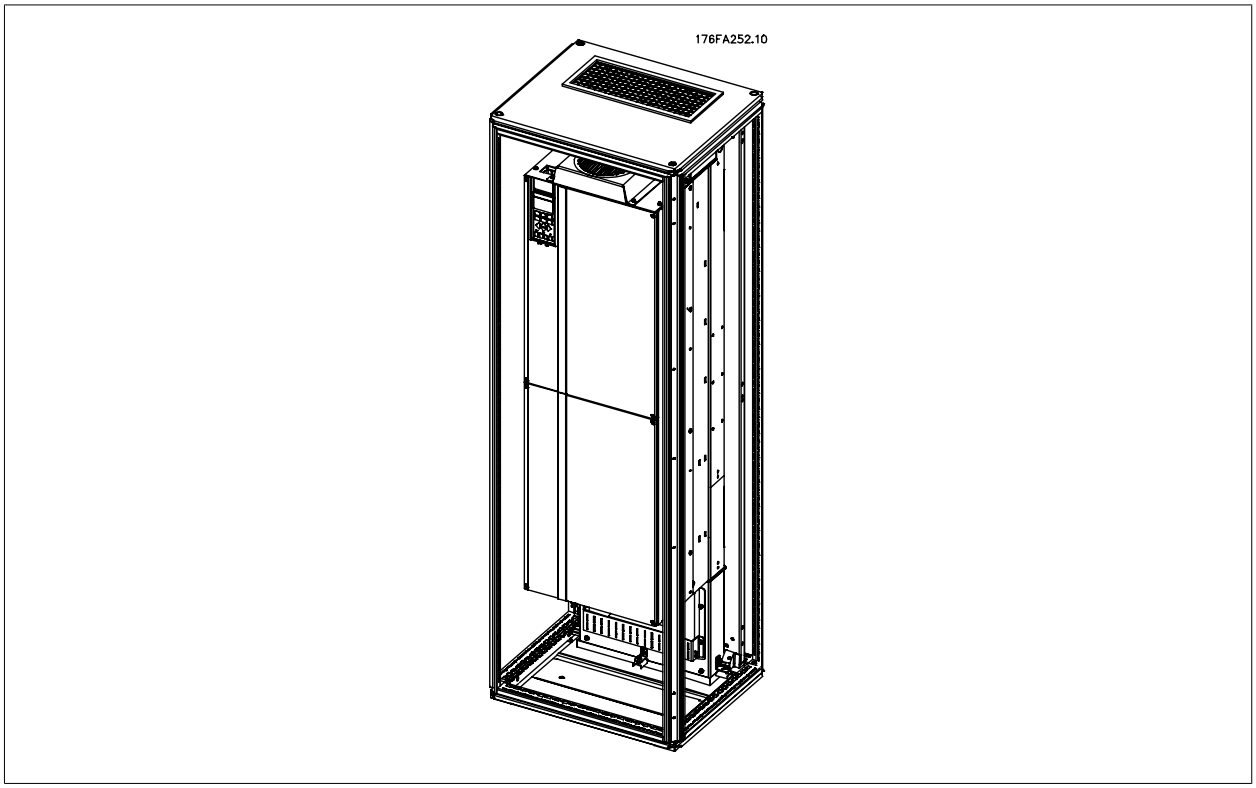


Illustration 3.31: Installation of IP00 in Rittal TS8 enclosure.

The minimum enclosure dimension is:

- D3 and D4 frame: Depth 500 mm and width 600 mm.
- E2 frame: Depth 600 mm and width 800 mm.

The maximum depth and width are as required by the installation. When using multiple frequency converters in one enclosure it is recommended that each drive is mounted on its own back panel and supported along the mid-section of the panel. These duct work kits do not support the "in frame" mounting of the panel (see Rittal TS8 catalogue for details). The duct work cooling kits listed in the table below are suitable for use only with IP 00 / Chassis frequency converters in Rittal TS8 IP 20 and UL and NEMA 1 and IP 54 and UL and NEMA 12 enclosures.

For the E2 frames it is important to mount the plate at the absolute rear of the Rittal enclosure due to the weight of the frequency converter.

NB!

A doorfan(s) is required on the Rittal cabinet to remove the loses not contained in the backchannel of the drive. The minimum doorfan(s) airflow required at the drive maximum ambient for the D3 and D4 is 391 m^3/h (230 cfm). The minimum doorfan(s) airflow required at the drive maximum ambient for the E2 is 782 m^3/h (460 cfm). If the ambient is below maximum or if additional components, heat loses, are added within the enclosure a calculation must be made to ensure the proper airflow is provided to cool the inside of the Rittal enclosure.

Ordering Information

Rittal TS-8 Enclosure	Frame D3 Kit Part No.	Frame D4Kit Part No.	Frame E2 Part No.
1800 mm	176F1824	176F1823	Not possible
2000 mm	176F1826	176F1825	176F1850
2200 mm			176F0299

Kit Contents

- Ductwork components
- Mounting hardware
- Gasket material
- Delivered with D3 and D4 frame kits:
  - 175R5639 - Mounting templates and top/bottom cut out for Rittal enclosure.
- Delivered with E2 frame kits:
  - 175R1036 - Mounting templates and top/bottom cut out for Rittal enclosure.

All fasteners are either:

- 10 mm, M5 Nuts torque to 2.3 Nm (20 in-lbs)
- T25 Torx screws torque to 2.3 Nm (20 in-lbs)

NB!

Please see the *Duct Kit Instruction Manual, 175R5640,* for further information

3

External ducts

If additional duct work is added externally to the Rittal cabinet the pressure drop in the ducting must be calculated. Use the charts below to derate the frequency converter according to the pressure drop.

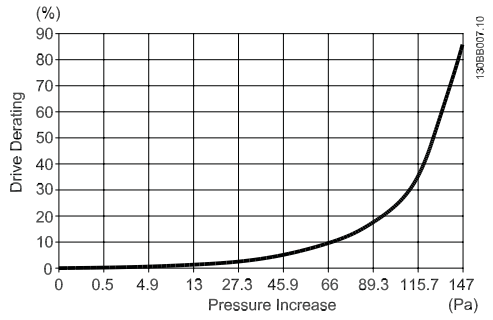


Illustration 3.32: D Frame Derating vs. Pressure Change
Drive air flow: 450 cfm (765 m3/h)

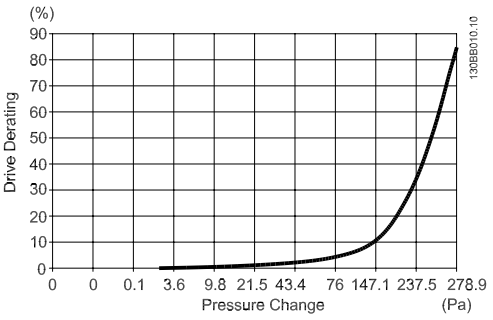


Illustration 3.33: E Frame Derating vs. Pressure Change (Small Fan), P250T5 and P355T7-P400T7
Drive air flow: 650 cfm (1105 m3/h)

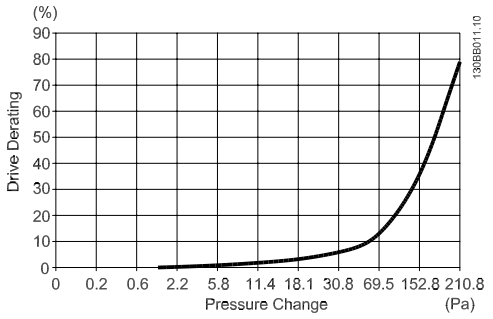


Illustration 3.34: E Frame Derating vs. Pressure Change (Large Fan), P315T5-P400T5 and P500T7-P560T7
Drive air flow: 850 cfm (1445 m3/h)

3.4.2 Outside installation / NEMA 3R kit for Rittal enclosures

This section is for the installation of NEMA 3R kits available for the frequency converter frames D3, D4 and E2. These kits are designed and tested to be used with IP00/ Chassis versions of these frames in Rittal TS8 NEMA 3R or NEMA 4 enclosures. The NEMA-3R enclosure is an outdoor enclosure that provides a degree of protection against rain and ice. The NEMA-4 enclosure is an outdoor enclosure that provides a greater degree of protection against weather and hosed water.
The minimum enclosure depth is 500 mm (600 mm for E2 frame) and the kit is designed for a 600 mm (800 mm for E2 frame) wide enclosure. Other enclosure widths are possible, however additional Rittal hardware is required. The maximum depth and width are as required by the installation.

NB!
The current rating of drives in D3 and D4 frames are de-rated by 3%, when adding the NEMA 3R kit. Drives in E2 frames require no derating

NB!
A doorfan(s) is required on the Rittal cabinet to remove the loses not contained in the backchannel of the drive. The minimum doorfan(s) airflow required at the drive maximum ambient for the D3 and D4 is 391 m^3/h (230 cfm). The minimum doorfan(s) airflow required at the drive maximum ambient for the E2 is 782 m^3/h (460 cfm). If the ambient is below maximum or if additional components, heat loses, are added within the enclosure a calculation must be made to ensure the proper airflow is provided to cool the inside of the Rittal enclosure.

Ordering information
Frame size D3: 176F4600
Frame size D4: 176F4601
Frame size E2: 176F1852

Kit contents:

- Ductwork components
- Mounting hardware
- 16 mm, M5 torx screws for top vent cover
- 10 mm, M5 for attaching drive mounting plate to enclosure
- M10 nuts to attach drive to mounting plate
- Gasket material

Torque requirements:

1. M5 screws/ nuts torque to 20 in-lbs (2.3 N-M)
2. M6 screws/ nuts torque to 35 in-lbs (3.9 N-M)
3. M10 nuts torque to 170 in-lbs (20 N-M)
4. T25 Torx screws torque to 20 in-lbs (2.3 N-M)

NB!
Please see the instructions *175R5922* for further information

3

3.4.3 Installation on pedestal

This section describes the installation of a pedestal unit available for the frequency converters frames D1 and D2. This is a 200 mm high pedestal that allows these frames to be floor mounted. The front of the pedestal has openings for input air to the power components.

The frequency converter gland plate must be installed to provide adequate cooling air to the control components of the frequency converter via the door fan and to maintain the IP21/NEMA 1 or IP54/NEMA 12 degrees of enclosure protections.

Illustration 3.35: Drive on pedestal

There is one pedestal that fits both frames D1 and D2. Its ordering number is 176F1827. The pedestal is standard for E1 frame.

Required Tools:

- Socket wrench with 7-17 mm sockets
- T30 Torx Driver

Torques:

- M6 - 4.0 Nm (35 in-lbs)
- M8 - 9.8 Nm (85 in-lbs)
- M10 - 19.6 Nm (170 in-lbs)

Kit Contents:

- Pedestal parts
- Instruction manual

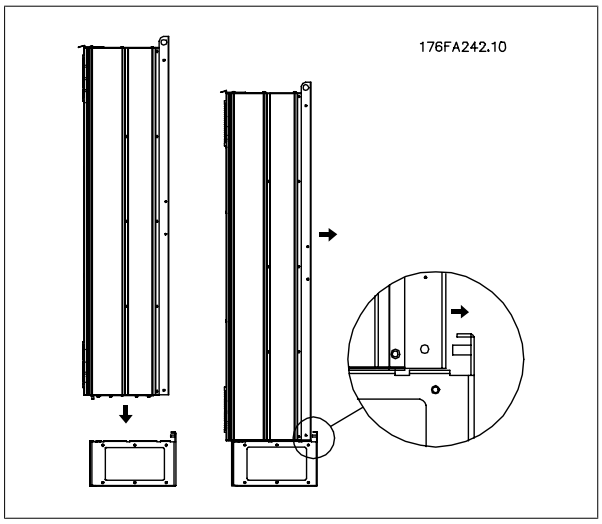


Illustration 3.36: Mounting of drive to pedestal.

Install the pedestal on the floor. Fixing holes are to be drilled according to this figure:

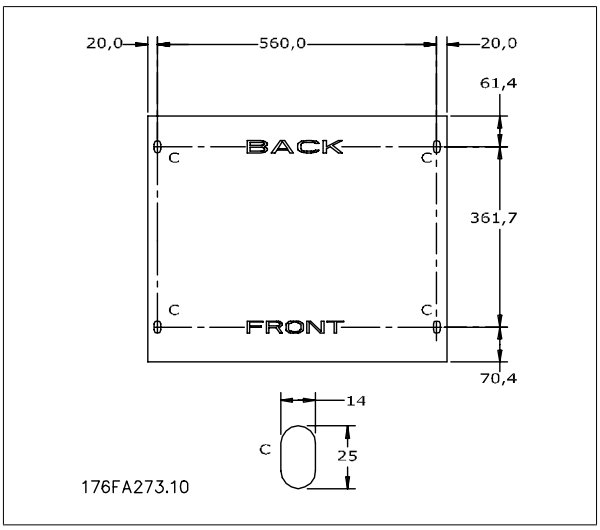


Illustration 3.37: Drill master for fixing holes in floor.

Mount the drive on the pedestal and fix it with the included bolts to the pedestal as shown on the illustration.

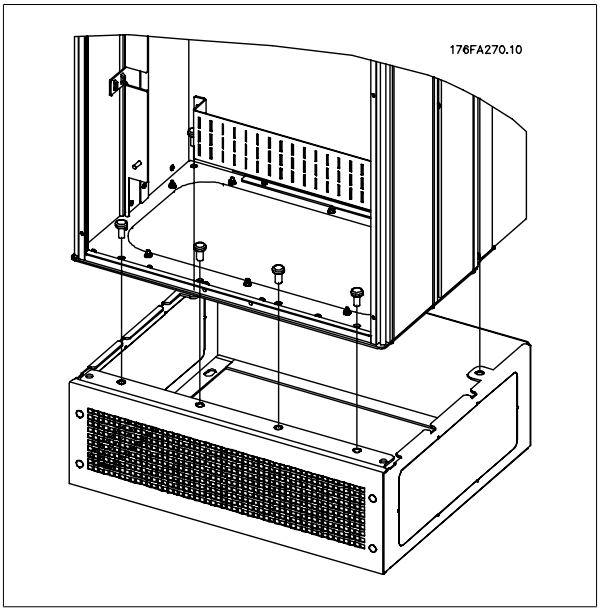


Illustration 3.38: Mounting of drive to pedestal

NB!

Please see the *Pedestal Kit Instruction Manual, 175R5642*, for further information.

3.4.4 Input plate option

This section is for the field installation of input option kits available for frequency converters in all D and E frames.
Do not attempt to remove RFI filters from input plates. Damage may occur to RFI filters if they are removed from the input plate.

NB!
Where RFI filters are available, there are two different type of RFI filters depending on the input plate combination and the RFI filters interchangeable. Field installable kits in certain cases are the same for all voltages.

3

	380 - 480 V 380 - 500 V	Fuses	Disconnect Fuses	RFI	RFI Fuses	RFI Disconnect Fuses
D1	All D1 power sizes	176F8442	176F8450	176F8444	176F8448	176F8446
D2	All D2 power sizes	176F8443	176F8441	176F8445	176F8449	176F8447
E1	FC 301FC 102/ 202: 315 kW FC 302: 250 kW	176F0253	176F0255	176F0257	176F0258	176F0260
	FC 301FC 102/ 202: 355 - 450 kW FC 302: 315 - 400 kW	176F0254	176F0256	176F0257	176F0259	176F0262

	525 - 600 V 525 - 690 V	Fuses	Disconnect Fuses	RFI	RFI Fuses	RFI Disconnect Fuses
D1	FC 301FC 102: 75 kW FC202: 45-90 kW FC302: 37-75 kW	175L8829	175L8828	175L8777	NA	NA
	FC 301FC 102/ 302: 90-132 kW FC202: 110-160 kW	175L8442	175L8445	175L8777	NA	NA
D2	All D2 power sizes	175L8827	175L8826	175L8825	NA	NA
E1	FC 301FC 102/ 302: 355-400 kW FC202: 450-500 kW	176F0253	176F0255	NA	NA	NA
	FC 301FC 102: 450-500 kW FC202: 560-630 kW FC302: 500-560 kW	176F0254	176F0258	NA	NA	NA

Kit contents

- Input plate assembled
- Instruction sheet 175R5795
- Modification Label
- Disconnect handle template (units w/ mains disconnect)

Cautions

- Frequency converter contains dangerous voltages when connected to line voltage. No disassembly should be attempted with power applied
- Electrical parts of the frequency converter may contain dangerous voltages even after the mains have been disconnected. Wait a minimum of 15 minutes after disconnecting the mains before touching any internal components to ensure that capacitors have fully discharged
- The input plates contain metal parts with sharp edges. Use hand protection when removing and reinstalling.
- E1 frame input plates are heavy (20-35 kg depending on configuration). It is recommended that the disconnect switch be removed from input plate for easier installation and be reinstalled on the input plate after the input plate has been installed on the drive

NB!
For further information, please see the Instruction Sheet, *175R5795*

3.4.5 Installation of Mains Shield for frequency converters

This section is for the installation of a mains shield for the frequency converter series with D1, D2 and E1 frames. It is not possible to install in the IP00/ Chassis versions as these have included as standard a metal cover. These shields satisfy VBG-4 requirements.

Ordering numbers:
Frames D1 and D2 : 176F0799
Frame E1: 176F1851

Torque requirements

M6 - 35 in-lbs (4.0 N-M)

M8 - 85 in-lbs (9.8 N-M)

M10 - 170 in-lbs (19.6 N-M)

NB!
For further information, please see the Instruction Sheet, *175R5923*

3.5 Frame size F Panel Options

3.5.1 Frame size F Panel Options

Space Heaters and Thermostat
Mounted on the cabinet interior of frame size F frequency converters, space heaters controlled via automatic thermostat help control humidity inside the enclosure, extending the lifetime of drive components in damp environments.

Cabinet Light with Power Outlet
A light mounted on the cabinet interior of frame size F frequency converters increase visibility during servicing and maintenance. The housing the light includes a power outlet for temporarily powering tools or other devices, available in two voltages:

- 230V, 50Hz, 2.5A, CE/ENEC
- 120V, 60Hz, 5A, UL/cUL

Transformer Tap Setup
If the Cabinet Light & Outlet and/or the Space Heaters & Thermostat are installed Transformer T1 requires it taps to be set to the proper input voltage. A 380-500 V drive will initially be set to the 525 V tap and a 525-690 V drive will be set to the 690 V tap to insure no overvoltage of secondary equipment

occurs if the tap is not changed prior to power being applied. See the table below to set the proper tap at terminal T1 located in the rectifier cabinet. For location in the drive, see illustration of rectifier in the *Power Connections* section.

Input Voltage Range	Tap to Select
380V-440V	400V
441V-490V	460V
491V-550V	525V
551V-625V	575V
626V-660V	660V
661V-690V	690V

NAMUR Terminals

NAMUR is an international association of automation technology users in the process industries, primarily chemical and pharmaceutical industries in Germany. Selection of this option provides terminals organized and labeled to the specifications of the NAMUR standard for drive input and output terminals. This requires MCB 112 PTC Thermistor Card and MCB 113 Extended Relay Card.

RCM (Residual Current Monitor)

Designed for monitoring residual leakage current to ground on supply mains (TN and TT systems), the RCM requires an external measuring transformer (supplied and installed by customer). Two relays (N.O. or N.C.) allow separate setpoints for pre-warning (50% of alarm threshold) and alarm conditions.

- Integrated into the drive's safe-stop circuit
- LED bar graph indicator of residual leakage current level
- Fault memory
- TEST / RESET button

Insulation Resistance Monitor (IRM)

Designed for monitoring of insulation resistance between system conductors and ground in ungrounded supply mains or mains with connection to ground through a high impedance (such as IT systems). Two individually adjustable relays (N.O. or N.C.) allow separate setpoints for pre-warning and alarm conditions.

- Integrated into the drive's safe-stop circuit
- LC display of insulation resistance
- Fault Memory
- INFO, TEST, and RESET buttons

IEC Emergency Stop with Pilz Safety Relay

Includes a redundant 4-wire emergency-stop pushbutton mounted on the front of the enclosure and a Pilz relay that monitors it in conjunction with the drive's safe-stop circuit and the mains contactor located in the options cabinet.

Manual Motor Starters

Provide 3-phase power for electric blowers often required for larger motors. Power for the starters is provided from the load side of any supplied contactor, circuit breaker, or disconnect switch. Power is fused before each motor starter, and is off when the incoming power to the drive is off. Up to two starters are allowed (one if a 30-amp, fuse-protected circuit is ordered). Integrated into the drive's safe-stop circuit.
Unit features include:

- Operation switch (on/off)
- Short-circuit and overload protection with test function
- Manual reset function

30-Amp, Fuse-Protected Terminals

- 3-phase power matching incoming mains voltage for powering auxiliary customer equipment
- Not available if two manual motor starters are selected
- Terminals are off when the incoming power to the drive is off
- Power for the fused protected terminals will be provided from the load side of any supplied contactor, circuit breaker, or disconnect switch.

24 VDC Power Supply

- 5 amp, 120 W, 24 VDC
- Protected against output overcurrent, overload, short circuits, and overtemperature
- For powering customer-supplied accessory devices such as sensors, PLC I/O, contactors, temperature probes, indicator lights, and/or other electronic hardware

- Diagnostics include a dry DC-ok contact, a green DC-ok LED, and a red overload LED

External Temperature Monitoring

Designed for monitoring temperatures of external system components, such as the motor windings and/or bearings. Eight signal inputs are each brought to individual modules, each configurable for a different type of signal. Modules can communicate with one another and can be monitored via a fieldbus network (requires the purchase of a separate module/bus coupler). Integrated into the drive's safe-stop circuit.

Possible input signal types:

- RTD inputs (including Pt100), 3-wire or 4-wire
- Thermocouple

Additional features:

- One universal output, configurable for either analog voltage or analog current
- Two output relays (N.O.)
- Dual-line LC display and LED dignostics
- Sensor lead wire break, short-circuit, and incorrect polarity detection

In addition to the eight universal inputs described above, two dedicated Thermistor Motor Protection Modules are also included. Features include:

- One Type A PTC Thermistors input per module (2 modules total*)
- Fault diagnostics for wire breakage or short-circuits of sensor leads
- ATEX/UL/CSA certification

* Note: A third thermistor input can be provided by the PTC Thermistor Option Card MCB 112, if necessary

3.6 Electrical Installation

3.6.1 Power Connections

Cabling and Fusing

3

NB!

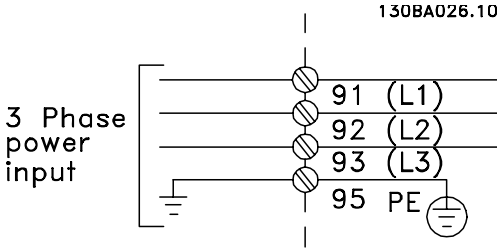
Cables General

All cabling must comply with national and local regulations on cable cross-sections and ambient temperature. Copper (75°C) conductors are recommended.

The power cable connections are situated as shown below. Dimensioning of cable cross section must be done in accordance with the current ratings and local legislation. See the *Specifications section* for details.

For protection of the frequency converter, the recommended fuses must be used or the unit must be with built-in fuses. Recommended fuses can be seen in the tables of the fuse section. Always ensure that proper fusing is made according to local regulation.

The mains connection is fitted to the mains switch if this is included.



NB!

The motor cable must be screened/armoured. If an unscreened/unarmoured cable is used, some EMC requirements are not complied with. Use a screened/armoured motor cable to comply with EMC emission specifications. For more information, see *EMC specifications* in the *Design Guide*.

See section *General Specifications* for correct dimensioning of motor cable cross-section and length.

Screening of cables:

Avoid installation with twisted screen ends (pigtails). They spoil the screening effect at higher frequencies. If it is necessary to break the screen to install a motor isolator or motor contactor, the screen must be continued at the lowest possible HF impedance.

Connect the motor cable screen to both the de-coupling plate of the frequency converter and to the metal housing of the motor.

Make the screen connections with the largest possible surface area (cable clamp). This is done by using the supplied installation devices within the frequency converter.

Cable-length and cross-section:

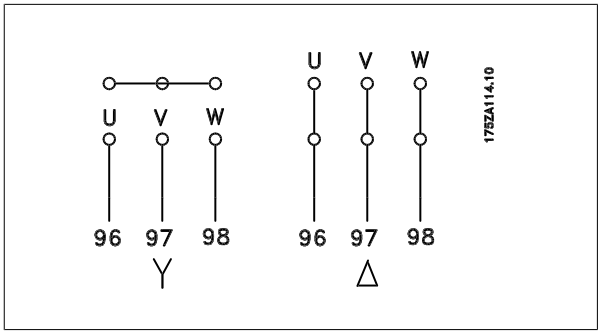
The frequency converter has been EMC tested with a given length of cable. Keep the motor cable as short as possible to reduce the noise level and leakage currents.

Switching frequency:

When frequency converters are used together with Sine-wave filters to reduce the acoustic noise from a motor, the switching frequency must be set according to the instruction in par. .

Term. no.	96	97	98	99	
	U	V	W	PE[1)]	Motor voltage 0-100% of mains voltage. 3 wires out of motor
	U1 W2	V1 U2	W1 V2	PE[1)]	Delta-connected 6 wires out of motor
	U1	V1	W1	PE[1)]	Star-connected U2, V2, W2 U2, V2 and W2 to be interconnected separately.

[1)]Protected Earth Connection



NB!

In motors without phase insulation paper or other insulation reinforcement suitable for operation with voltage supply (such as a frequency converter), fit a Sine-wave filter on the output of the frequency converter.

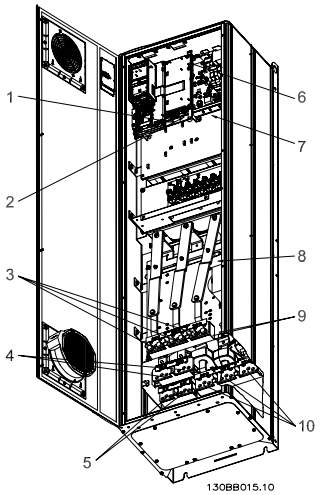


Illustration 3.39: Compact IP 21 (NEMA 1) and IP 54 (NEMA 12), frame size D1

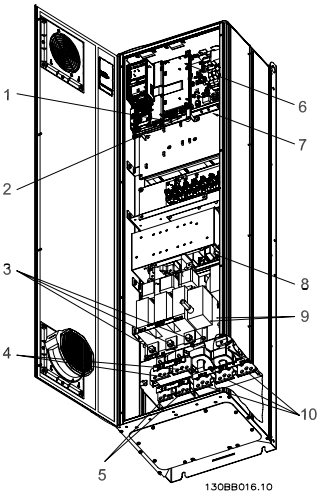


Illustration 3.40: Compact IP 21 (NEMA 1) and IP 54 (NEMA 12) with disconnect, fuse and RFI filter, frame size D2

1) AUX Relay
   01 02 03
   04 05 06
2) Temp Switch
   106 104 105
3) Line
   R S T
   91 92 93
   L1 L2 L3
4) Load sharing
   -DC +DC
   88 89
5) Brake
   -R +R
   81 82
6) SMPS Fuse (see fuse tables for part number)
7) AUX Fan
   100 101 102 103
   L1 L2 L1 L2
8) Fan Fuse (see fuse tables for part number)
9) Mains ground
10) Motor
   U V W
   96 97 98
   T1 T2 T3

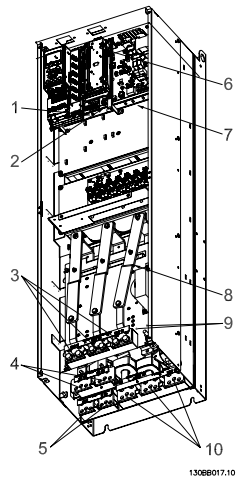


Illustration 3.41: Compact IP 00 (Chassis), frame size D3

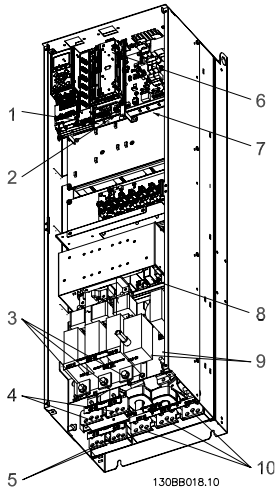


Illustration 3.42: Compact IP 00 (Chassis) with disconnect, fuse and RFI filter, frame size D4

1) AUX Relay
   01 02 03
   04 05 06
2) Temp Switch
   106 104 105
3) Line
   R S T
   91 92 93
   L1 L2 L3
4) Load sharing
   -DC +DC
   88 89
5) Brake
   -R +R
   81 82
6) SMPS Fuse (see fuse tables for part number)
7) AUX Fan
   100 101 102 103
   L1 L2 L1 L2
8) Fan Fuse (see fuse tables for part number)
9) Mains ground
10) Motor
   U V W
   96 97 98
   T1 T2 T3

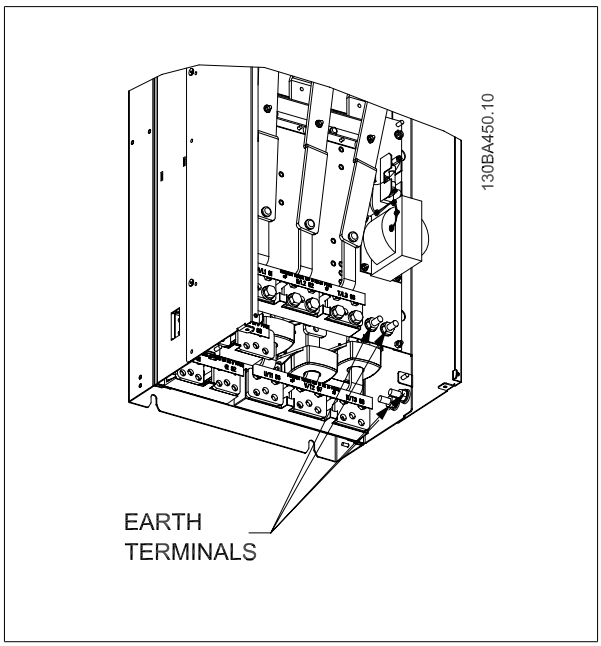


Illustration 3.43: Position of earth terminals IP00, frame sizes D

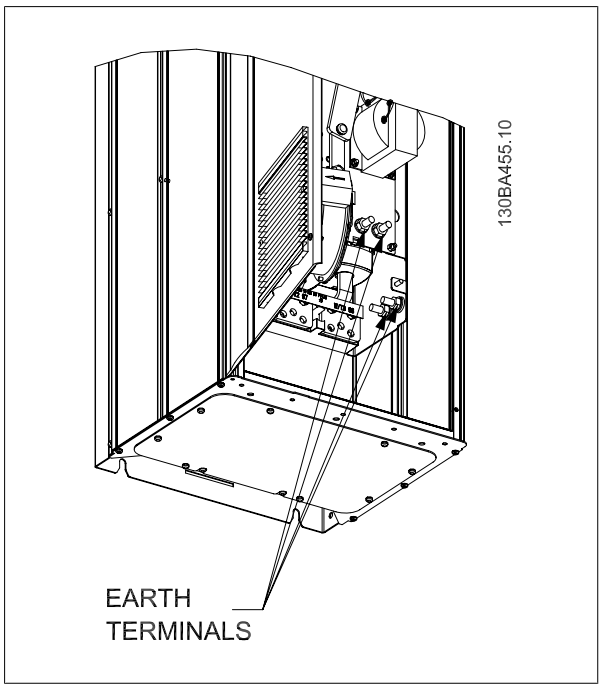


Illustration 3.44: Position of earth terminals IP21 (NEMA type 1) and IP54 (NEMA type 12)

NB!
D2 and D4 shown as examples. D1 and D3 are equivalent.

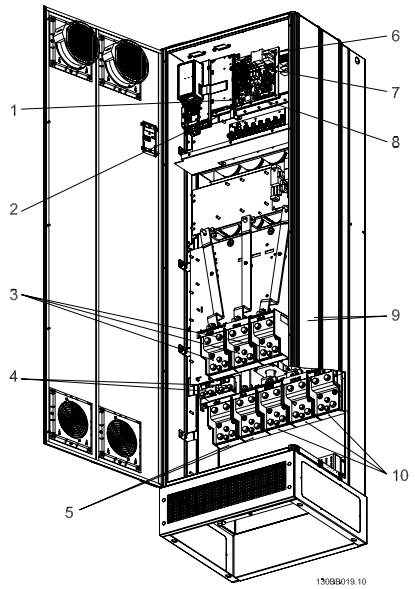


Illustration 3.45: Compact IP 21 (NEMA 1) and IP 54 (NEMA 12) frame size E1

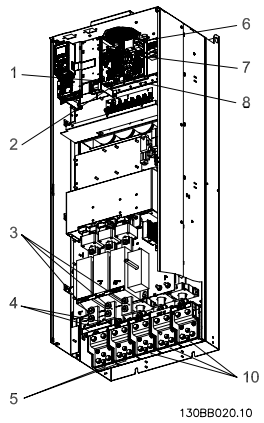


Illustration 3.46: Compact IP 00 (Chassis) with disconnect, fuse and RFI filter, frame size E2

1) AUX Relay
   01 02 03
   04 05 06
2) Temp Switch
   106 104 105
3) Line
   R S T
   91 92 93
   L1 L2 L3
4) Brake
   -R +R
   81 82
5) Load sharing
   -DC +DC
   88 89
6) SMPS Fuse (see fuse tables for part number)
7) Fan Fuse (see fuse tables for part number)
8) AUX Fan
   100 101 102 103
   L1 L2 L1 L2
9) Mains ground
10) Motor
   U V W
   96 97 98
   T1 T2 T3

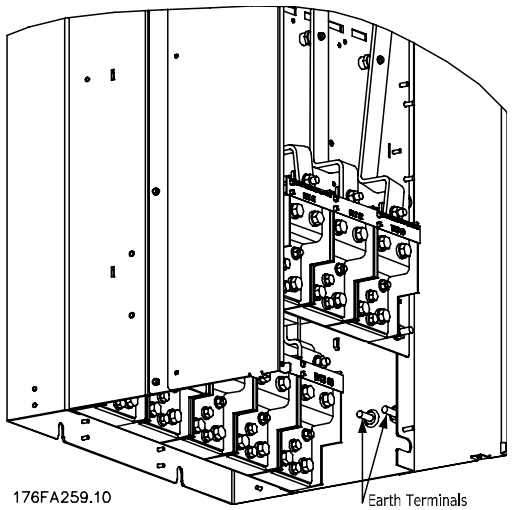


Illustration 3.47: Position of earth terminals IP00, frame sizes E

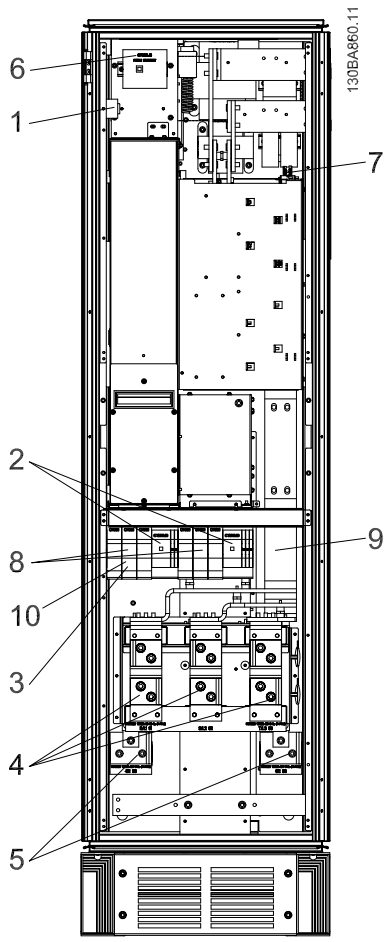


Illustration 3.48: Rectifier Cabinet, frame size F1, F2, F3 and F4

1) 24 V DC, 5 A
   T1 Output Taps
   Temp Switch
   106 104 105
2) Manual Motor Starters
3) 30 A Fuse Protected Power Terminals
4) Line
   R S T
   L1 L2 L3
5) Loadsharing
   -DC +DC
   88 89
6) Control Transformer Fuses (2 or 4 pieces). See fuse tables for part numbers
7) SMPS Fuse. See fuse tables for part numbers
8) Manual Motor Controller fuses (3 or 6 pieces). See fuse tables for part numbers
9) Line Fuses, F1 and F2 frame (3 pieces). See fuse tables for part numbers
10) 30 Amp Fuse Protected Power fuses

3

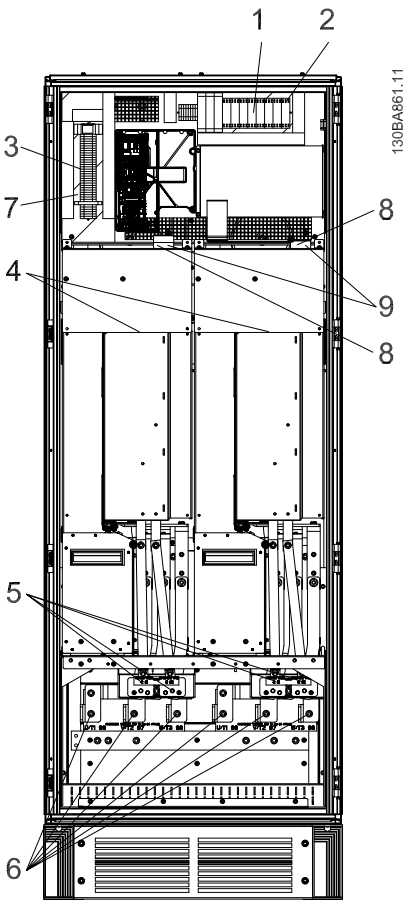


Illustration 3.49: Inverter Cabinet, frame size F1 and F3

1) External Temperature Monitoring
2) AUX Relay
   01 02 03
   04 05 06
3) NAMUR
4) AUX Fan
   100 101 102 103
   L1 L2 L1 L2
5) Brake
   -R +R
   81 82
6) Motor
   U V W
   96 97 98
   T1 T2 T3
7) NAMUR Fuse. See fuse tables for part numbers
8) Fan Fuses. See fuse tables for part numbers
9) SMPS Fuses. See fuse tables for part numbers

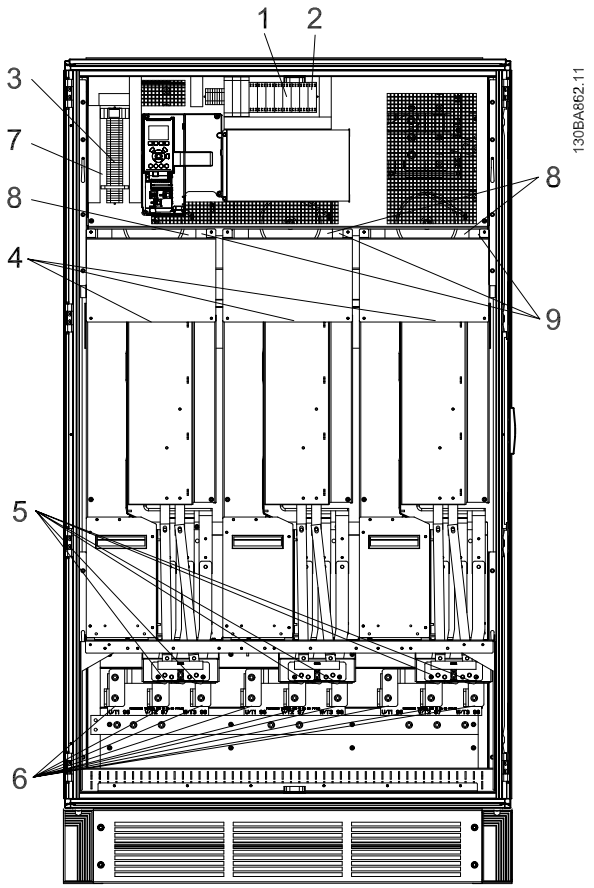


Illustration 3.50: Inverter Cabinet, frame size F2 and F4

1) External Temperature Monitoring
2) AUX Relay

   01 02 03
   04 05 06
3) NAMUR
4) AUX Fan

   100 101 102 103
   L1 L2 L1 L2
5) Brake

   -R +R
   81 82
6) Motor

   U V W

   96 97 98
   T1 T2 T3
7) NAMUR Fuse. See fuse tables for part numbers
8) Fan Fuses. See fuse tables for part numbers
9) SMPS Fuses. See fuse tables for part numbers

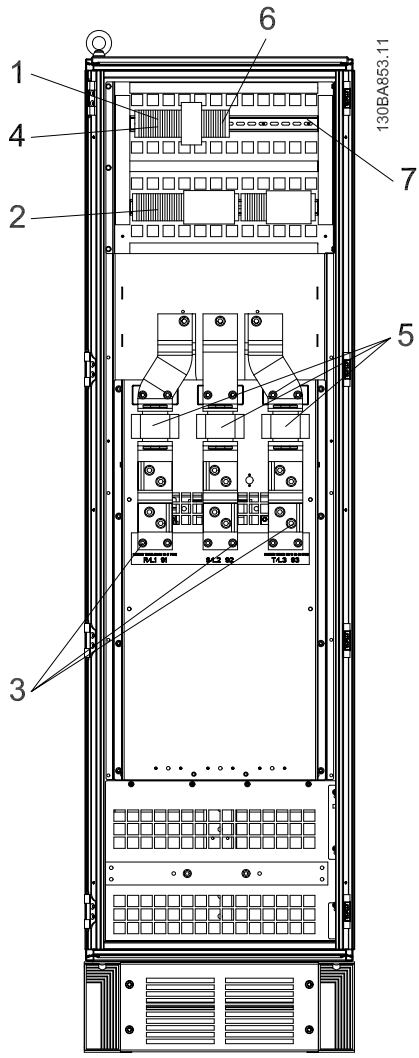


Illustration 3.51: Options Cabinet, frame size F3 and F4

1)	Pilz Relay Terminal	4)	Safety Relay Coil Fuse with PILS Relay
2)	RCD or IRM Terminal		See fuse tables for part numbers
3)	Mains	5)	Line Fuses, F3 and F4 (3 pieces)
	R S T		See fuse tables for part numbers
	91 92 93	6)	Contactor Relay Coil (230 VAC). N/C and N/O Aux Contacts
	L1 L2 L3	7)	Circuit Breaker Shunt Trip Control Terminals (230 VAC or 230 VDC)

3.6.2 Earthing

The following basic issues need to be considered when installing a frequency converter, so as to obtain electromagnetic compatibility (EMC).

- Safety earthing: Please note that the frequency converter has a high leakage current and must be earthed appropriately for safety reasons. Apply local safety regulations.
- High-frequency earthing: Keep the earth wire connections as short as possible.

Connect the different earth systems at the lowest possible conductor impedance. The lowest possible conductor impedance is obtained by keeping the conductor as short as possible and by using the greatest possible surface area.
The metal cabinets of the different devices are mounted on the cabinet rear plate using the lowest possible HF impedance. This avoids having different HF voltages for the individual devices and avoids the risk of radio interference currents running in connection cables that may be used between the devices. The radio interference will have been reduced.
In order to obtain a low HF impedance, use the fastening bolts of the devices as HF connection to the rear plate. It is necessary to remove insulating paint or similar from the fastening points.

3.6.3 Extra Protection (RCD)

ELCB relays, multiple protective earthing or earthing can be used as extra protection, provided that local safety regulations are complied with.

In the case of an earth fault, a DC component may develop in the fault current.

If ELCB relays are used, local regulations must be observed. Relays must be suitable for protection of 3-phase equipment with a bridge rectifier and for a brief discharge on power-up.

See also the section *Special Conditions* in the Design Guide.

3.6.4 RFI Switch

Mains supply isolated from earth
If the frequency converter is supplied from an isolated mains source (IT mains, floating delta and grounded delta) or TT/TN-S mains with grounded leg, the RFI switch is recommended to be turned off (OFF) [1)] via par. . For further reference, see IEC 364-3. In case optimum EMC performance is needed, parallel motors are connected or the motor cable length is above 25 m, it is recommended to set par. to [ON].
[1)] Not available for 525-600/690 V frequency converters.
In OFF, the internal RFI capacities (filter capacitors) between the chassis and the intermediate circuit are cut off to avoid damage to the intermediate circuit and to reduce the earth capacity currents (according to IEC 61800-3).
Please also refer to the application note *VLT on IT mains, MN.90.CX.02.* It is important to use isolation monitors that are capable for use together with power electronics (IEC 61557-8).

3.6.5 Torque

When tightening all electrical connections it is very important to tighten with the correct torque. Too low or too high torque results in a bad electrical connection. Use a torque wrench to ensure correct torque

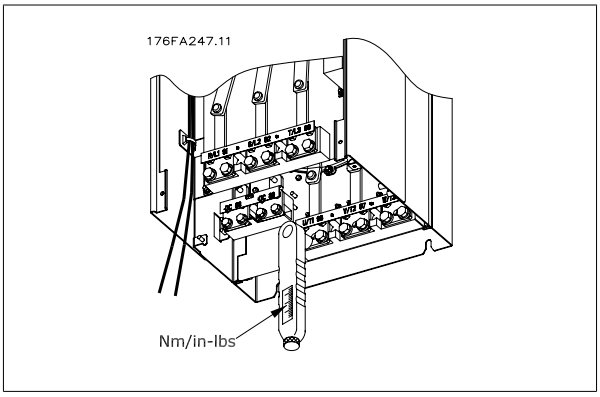


Illustration 3.52: Always use a torque wrench to tighten the bolts.

Frame size	Terminal	Torque	Bolt size
D1, D2, D3 and D4	Mains Motor	19 Nm (168 in-lbs)	M10
	Load sharing Brake	9.5 (84 in-lbs)	M8
E1 and E2	Mains Motor Load sharing	19 NM (168 in-lbs)	M10
	Brake	9.5 (84 in-lbs)	M8
F1, F2, F3 and F4	Mains Motor	19 Nm (168 in-lbs)	M10
	Load sharing	19 Nm (168 in-lbs)	M10
	Brake	9.5 Nm (84 in-lbs)	M8
	Regen	19 Nm (168 in-lbs)	M10

Table 3.3: Torque for terminals

3.6.6 Shielded Cables

It is important that shielded and armoured cables are connected in a proper way to ensure high EMC immunity and low emissions.

Connection can be made using either cable glands or clamps:

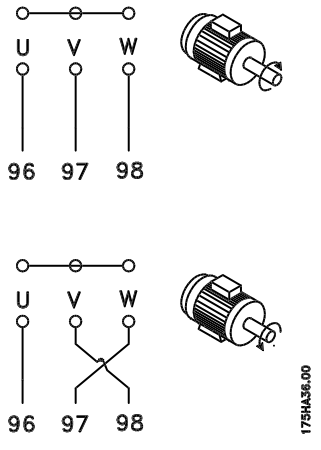
- EMC cable glands: Generally available cable glands can be used to ensure an optimum EMC connection.
- EMC cable clamp: Clamps allowing easy connection are supplied with the frequency converter.

3.6.7 Motor cable

The motor must be connected to terminals U/T1/96, V/T2/97, W/T3/98. Earth to terminal 99. All types of three-phase asynchronous standard motors can be used with a frequency converter unit. The factory setting is for clockwise rotation with the frequency converter output connected as follows:

Terminal No.	Function
96, 97, 98, 99	Mains U/T1, V/T2, W/T3 Earth

- Terminal U/T1/96 connected to U-phase
- Terminal V/T2/97 connected to V-phase
- Terminal W/T3/98 connected to W-phase



The direction of rotation can be changed by switching two phases in the motor cable or by changing the setting of par. .
Motor rotation check can be performed using par. 1-28 Motor *Rotation Check* and following the steps shown in the display.

F frame Requirements

F1/F3 requirements: Motor phase cable quantities must be 2, 4, 6, or 8 (multiples of 2) to obtain equal amount of wires attached to both inverter module terminals. The cables are required to be equal length within 10% between the inverter module terminals and the first common point of a phase. The recommended common point is the motor terminals.

F2/F4 requirements: Motor phase cable quantities must be 3, 6, 9, or 12 (multiples of 3) to obtain equal amount of wires attached to each inverter module terminal. The wires are required to be equal length within 10% between the inverter module terminals and the first common point of a phase. The recommended common point is the motor terminals.

Output junction box requirements: The length, minimum 2.5 meters, and quantity of cables must be equal from each inverter module to the common terminal in the junction box.

NB!
If a retrofit applications requires unequal amount of wires per phase please consult the factory for requirements.

3.6.8 Brake Cable Drives with factory installed Brake Chopper option

(Only standard with letter B in position 18 of typecode).

The connection cable to the brake resistor must be screened and the max. length from frequency converter to the DC bar is limited to 25 metres (82 feet).

Terminal No.	Function
81, 82	Brake resistor terminals

The connection cable to the brake resistor must be screened. Connect the screen by means of cable clamps to the conductive back plate at the frequency converter and to the metal cabinet of the brake resistor.
Size the brake cable cross-section to match the brake torque. See also *Brake Instructions, MI.90.Fx.yy* and *MI.50.Sx.yy* for further information regarding safe installation.

Please note that voltages up to 1099 VDC, depending on the supply voltage, may occur on the terminals.

F Frame Requirements
The brake resistor(s) must be connected to the brake terminals in each inverter module.

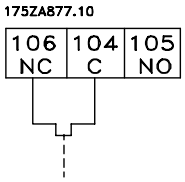
3.6.9 Brake Resistor Temperature Switch

Torque: 0.5-0.6 Nm (5 in-lbs)
Screw size: M3

This input can be used to monitor the temperature of an externally connected brake resistor. If the input between 104 and 106 is established, the frequency converter will trip on warning / alarm 27, "Brake IGBT". If the connection is closed between 104 and 105, the frequency converter will trip on warning / alarm 27, "Brake IGBT".
Normally closed: 104-106 (factory installed jumper)
Normally open: 104-105

Terminal No.	Function
106, 104, 105	Brake resistor temperature switch.

If the temperature of the brake resistor gets too high and the thermal switch drops out, the frequency converter will stop braking. The motor will start coasting. A KLIXON switch must be installed that is `normally closed'. If this function is not used, 106 and 104 must be short-circuited together.



3

3.6.10 Load Sharing

Terminal No.	Function
88, 89	Loadsharing

The connection cable must be screened and the max. length from the frequency converter to the DC bar is limited to 25 metres (82 feet).
Load sharing enables linking of the DC intermediate circuits of several frequency converters.

Please note that voltages up to 1099 VDC may occur on the terminals.
Load Sharing calls for extra equipment and safety considerations. For further information, see load sharing Instructions MI.50.NX.YY.

Please note that mains disconnect may not isolate the frequency converter due to DC link connection

3.6.11 Shielding against Electrical Noise

Before mounting the mains power cable, mount the EMC metal cover to ensure best EMC performance.

NOTE: The EMC metal cover is only included in units with an RFI filter.

Illustration 3.53: Mounting of EMC shield.

3.6.12 Mains connection

Mains must be connected to terminals 91, 92 and 93. Earth is connected to the terminal to the right of terminal 93.

Terminal No.	Function
91, 92, 93	Mains R/L1, S/L2, T/L3
94	Earth

Check the name plate to ensure that the mains voltage of the frequency converter matches the power supply of your plant.

Ensure that the power supply can supply the necessary current to the frequency converter.

If the unit is without built-in fuses, ensure that the appropriate fuses have the correct current rating.

3.6.13 External Fan Supply

In case the frequency converter is supplied by DC or if the fan must run independently of the power supply, an external power supply can be applied. The connection is made on the power card.

Terminal No.	Function
100, 101	Auxiliary supply S, T
102, 103	Internal supply S, T

The connector located on the power card provides the connection of line voltage for the cooling fans. The fans are connected from factory to be supplied form a common AC line (jumpers between 100-102 and 101-103). If external supply is needed, the jumpers are removed and the supply is connected to terminals 100 and 101. A 5 Amp fuse should be used for protection. In UL applications this should be LittleFuse KLK-5 or equivalent.

3.6.14 Fuses

Branch circuit protection:

In order to protect the installation against electrical and fire hazard, all branch circuits in an installation, switch gear, machines etc., must be short-circuited and over-current protected according to national/international regulations.

Short-circuit protection:

The frequency converter must be protected against short-circuit to avoid electrical or fire hazard. DanfossDanfossDanfoss recommends using the fuses mentioned below to protect service personnel and equipment in case of an internal failure in the drive. The frequency converter provides full short-circuit protection in case of a short-circuit on the motor output.

Over-current protection

Provide overload protection to avoid fire hazard due to overheating of the cables in the installation. The frequency converter is equipped with an internal over-current protection that can be used for upstream overload protection (UL-applications excluded). See par. . Moreover, fuses or circuit breakers can be used to provide the over-current protection in the installation. Over-current protection must always be carried out according to national regulations.

Non UL compliance

If UL/cUL is not to be complied with, we recommend using the following fuses, which will ensure compliance with EN50178:
In case of malfunction, not following the recommendation may result in unnecessary damage to the frequency converter.

P90 - P200	380 - 500 V	type gG
P250 - P400	380 - 500 V	type gR

380-500 V, frame sizes D, E and F

The fuses below are suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering 100,000 Arms (symmetrical), 240V, or 480V, or 500V, or 600V depending on the drive voltage rating. With the proper fusing the drive Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR) is 100,000 Arms.

Size / Type	Bussmann E1958 JFHR2**	Bussmann E4273 T/JDDZ**	SIBA E180276 RKI/JDDZ	LittelFuse E71611 JFHR2**	Ferraz-Shawmut E60314 JFHR2**	Bussmann E4274 H/JDDZ**	Bussmann E125085 JFHR2*	Internal Option Bussmann
P90K	FWH-300	JJS-300	2028220-315	L50S-300	A50-P300	NOS-300	170M3017	170M3018
P110	FWH-350	JJS-350	2028220-315	L50S-350	A50-P350	NOS-350	170M3018	170M3018
P132	FWH-400	JJS-400	206xx32-400	L50S-400	A50-P400	NOS-400	170M4012	170M4016
P160	FWH-500	JJS-500	206xx32-500	L50S-500	A50-P500	NOS-500	170M4014	170M4016
P200	FWH-600	JJS-600	206xx32-600	L50S-600	A50-P600	NOS-600	170M4016	170M4016

Table 3.4: Frame size D, Line fuses, 380-500 V

Size / Type	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Ferraz	Siba
P250	170M4017	700 A, 700 V	6.9URD31D08A0700	20 610 32.700
P315	170M6013	900 A, 700 V	6.9URD33D08A0900	20 630 32.900
P355	170M6013	900 A, 700 V	6.9URD33D08A0900	20 630 32.900
P400	170M6013	900 A, 700 V	6.9URD33D08A0900	20 630 32.900

Table 3.5: Frame size E, Line fuses, 380-500 V

Size / Type	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Siba	Internal Bussmann Option
P450	170M7081	1600 A, 700 V	20 695 32.1600	170M7082
P500	170M7081	1600 A, 700 V	20 695 32.1600	170M7082
P560	170M7082	2000 A, 700 V	20 695 32.2000	170M7082
P630	170M7082	2000 A, 700 V	20 695 32.2000	170M7082
P710	170M7083	2500 A, 700 V	20 695 32.2500	170M7083
P800	170M7083	2500 A, 700 V	20 695 32.2500	170M7083

Table 3.6: Frame size F, Line fuses, 380-500 V

Size / Type	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Siba
P450	170M8611	1100 A, 1000 V	20 781 32.1000
P500	170M8611	1100 A, 1000 V	20 781 32.1000
P560	170M6467	1400 A, 700 V	20 681 32.1400
P630	170M6467	1400 A, 700 V	20 681 32.1400
P710	170M8611	1100 A, 1000 V	20 781 32.1000
P800	170M6467	1400 A, 700 V	20 681 32.1400

Table 3.7: Frame size F, Inverter module DC Link Fuses, 380-500 V

*170M fuses from Bussmann shown use the -/80 visual indicator, -TN/80 Type T, -/110 or TN/110 Type T indicator fuses of the same size and amperage may be substituted for external use

**Any minimum 500 V UL listed fuse with associated current rating may be used to meet UL requirements.

525-690 V, frame sizes D, E and F

Size / Type	Bussmann E125085 JFHR2	Amps	SIBA E180276 JFHR2	Ferraz-Shawmut E76491 JFHR2	Internal Option Bussmann
P37K	170M3013	125	2061032.125	6.6URD30D08A0125	170M3015
P45K	170M3014	160	2061032.16	6.6URD30D08A0160	170M3015
P55K	170M3015	200	2061032.2	6.6URD30D08A0200	170M3015
P75K	170M3015	200	2061032.2	6.6URD30D08A0200	170M3015
P90K	170M3016	250	2061032.25	6.6URD30D08A0250	170M3018
P110	170M3017	315	2061032.315	6.6URD30D08A0315	170M3018
P132	170M3018	350	2061032.35	6.6URD30D08A0350	170M3018
P160	170M4011	350	2061032.35	6.6URD30D08A0350	170M5011
P200	170M4012	400	2061032.4	6.6URD30D08A0400	170M5011
P250	170M4014	500	2061032.5	6.6URD30D08A0500	170M5011
P315	170M5011	550	2062032.55	6.6URD32D08A550	170M5011

Table 3.8: Frame size D, 525-690 V

Size / Type	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Ferraz	Siba
P355	170M4017	700 A, 700 V	6.9URD31D08A0700	20 610 32.700
P400	170M4017	700 A, 700 V	6.9URD31D08A0700	20 610 32.700
P500	170M6013	900 A, 700 V	6.9URD33D08A0900	20 630 32.900
P560	170M6013	900 A, 700 V	6.9URD33D08A0900	20 630 32.900

Table 3.9: Frame size E, 525-690 V

Size / Type	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Siba	Internal Bussmann Option
P630	170M7081	1600 A, 700 V	20 695 32.1600	170M7082
P710	170M7081	1600 A, 700 V	20 695 32.1600	170M7082
P800	170M7081	1600 A, 700 V	20 695 32.1600	170M7082
P900	170M7081	1600 A, 700 V	20 695 32.1600	170M7082
P1M0	170M7082	2000 A, 700 V	20 695 32.2000	170M7082

Table 3.10: Frame size F, Line fuses, 525-690 V

Size / Type	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Siba
P630	170M8611	1100 A, 1000 V	20 781 32. 1000
P710	170M8611	1100 A, 1000 V	20 781 32. 1000
P800	170M8611	1100 A, 1000 V	20 781 32. 1000
P900	170M8611	1100 A, 1000 V	20 781 32. 1000
P1M0	170M8611	1100 A, 1000 V	20 781 32. 1000

Table 3.11: Frame size F, Inverter module DC Link Fuses, 525-690 V

*170M fuses from Bussmann shown use the -/80 visual indicator, -TN/80 Type T, -/110 or TN/110 Type T indicator fuses of the same size and amperage may be substituted for external use.

Suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 100 000 rms symmetrical amperes, 500/600/690 Volts maximum when protected by the above fuses.

Supplementary fuses

Frame size	Bussmann PN*	Rating
D, E and F	KTK-4	4 A, 600 V

Table 3.12: SMPS Fuse

3

Size/Type	Bussmann PN*	LittelFuse	Rating
P90K-P250, 380-500 V	KTK-4		4 A, 600 V
P37K-P400, 525-690 V	KTK-4		4 A, 600 V
P315-P800, 380-500 V		KLK-15	15A, 600 V
P500-P1M0, 525-690 V		KLK-15	15A, 600 V

Table 3.13: Fan Fuses

	Size/Type	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Alternative Fuses
2.5-4.0 A Fuse	P450-P800, 380-500 V	LPJ-6 SP or SPI	6 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 6A
	P630-P1M0, 525-690 V	LPJ-10 SP or SPI	10 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 10 A
4.0-6.3 A Fuse	P450-P800, 380-500 V	LPJ-10 SP or SPI	10 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 10 A
	P630-P1M0, 525-690 V	LPJ-15 SP or SPI	15 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 15 A
6.3 - 10 A Fuse	P450-P800, 380-500 V	LPJ-15 SP or SPI	15 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 15 A
	P630-P1M0, 525-690 V	LPJ-20 SP or SPI	20 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 20A
10 - 16 A Fuse	P450-P800, 380-500 V	LPJ-25 SP or SPI	25 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 25 A
	P630-P1M0, 525-690 V	LPJ-20 SP or SPI	20 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 20 A

Table 3.14: Manual Motor Controller Fuses

Frame size	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Alternative Fuses
F	LPJ-30 SP or SPI	30 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 30 A

Table 3.15: 30 A Fuse Protected Terminal Fuse

Frame size	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Alternative Fuses
F	LPJ-6 SP or SPI	6 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 6 A

Table 3.16: Control Transformer Fuse

Frame size	Bussmann PN*	Rating
F	GMC-800MA	800 mA, 250 V

Table 3.17: NAMUR Fuse

Frame size	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Alternative Fuses
F	LP-CC-6	6 A, 600 V	Any listed Class CC, 6 A

Table 3.18: Safety Relay Coil Fuse with PILS Relay

3.6.15 Mains disconnectors - frame size D, E and F

Frame size	Power & Voltage	Type
D1/D3	P90K-P110 380-500V & P90K-P132 525-690V	ABB OETL-NF200A
D2/D4	P132-P200 380-500V & P160-P315 525-690V	ABB OETL-NF400A
E1/E2	P250 380-500V & P355-P560 525-690V	ABB OETL-NF600A
E1/E2	P315-P400 380-500V	ABB OETL-NF800A
F3	P450 380-500V & P630-P710 525-690V	Merlin Gerin NPJF36000S12AAYP*
F4	P500-P630 380-500V & P800 525-690V	Merlin Gerin NRK36000S20AAYP*
F4	P710-P800 380-500V & P900-P1M0 525-690V	Merlin Gerin NRK36000S20AAYP*

* Drive SCCR rating maybe less than 100 kA when this option is added. See the drive label for SCCR rating.

3.6.16 F frame circuit breakers

Frame size	Power & Voltage	Type
F3	P450 380-500V & P630-P710 525-690V	Merlin Gerin NPJF36120U31AABSCYP*
F4	P500-P630 380-500V & P800 525-690V	Merlin Gerin NRJF36200U31AABSCYP*
F4	P710 380-500V & P900-P1M0 525-690V	Merlin Gerin NRJF36200U31AABSCYP*
F4	P800 380-500V	Merlin Gerin NRJF36250U31AABSCYP*

* Drive SCCR rating maybe less than 100 kA when this option is added. See the drive label for SCCR rating.

3.6.17 F frame mains contactors

Frame size	Power & Voltage	Type
F3	P450-P500 380-500V & P630-P800 525-690V	Eaton XTCE650N22A*
F3	P560 380-500V	Eaton XTCE820N22A*
F3	P630 380-500V	Eaton XTCEC14P22B*
F4	P900 525-690V	Eaton XTCE820N22A*
F4	P710-P800 380-500V & P1M0 525-690V	Eaton XTCEC14P22B*

* Drive SCCR rating maybe less than 100 kA when this option is added. See the drive label for SCCR rating.

3.6.18 Motor Insulation

For motor cable lengths ≤ the maximum cable length listed in the General Specifications tables the following motor insulation ratings are recommended because the peak voltage can be up to twice the DC link voltage, 2.8 times the mains voltage, due to transmission line effects in the motor cable. If a motor has lower insulation rating it recommended to use a du/dt or sine wave filter.

Nominal Mains Voltage	Motor Insulation
$U_N \leq 420$ V	Standard $U_{LL} = 1300$ V
420 V < $U_N \leq 500$ V	Reinforced $U_{LL} = 1600$ V
500 V < $U_N \leq 600$ V	Reinforced $U_{LL} = 1800$ V
600 V < $U_N \leq 690$ V	Reinforced $U_{LL} = 2000$ V

3.6.19 Motor Bearing Currents

All motors installed with FC302 90kW or higher power drives should have NDE (Non-Drive End) insulated bearings installed to eliminate circulating bearing currents. To minimize DE (Drive End) bearing and shaft currents proper grounding of the drive, motor, driven machine, and motor to the driven machine is required.

Standard Mitigation Strategies:

1. Use an insulated bearing
2. Apply rigorous installation procedures
   - Ensure the motor and load motor are aligned
   - Strictly follow the EMC Installation guideline
   - Reinforce the PE so the high frequency impedance is lower in the PE than the input power leads
   - Provide a good high frequency connection between the motor and the frequency converter for instance by screened cable which has a 360° connection in the motor and the frequency converter
   - Make sure that the impedance from frequency converter to building ground is lower that the grounding impedance of the machine. This can be difficult for pumps
   - Make a direct earth connection between the motor and load motor
3. Lower the IGBT switching frequency
4. Modify the inverter waveform, 60° AVM vs. SFAVM
5. Install a shaft grounding system or use an isolating coupling
6. Apply conductive lubrication
7. Use minimum speed settings if possible
8. Try to ensure the line voltage is balanced to ground. This can be difficult for IT, TT, TN-CS or Grounded leg systems
9. Use a dU/dt or sinus filter

3.6.20 Control cable routing

Tie down all control wires to the designated control cable routing as shown in the picture. Remember to connect the shields in a proper way to ensure optimum electrical immunity.

Fieldbus connection

Connections are made to the relevant options on the control card. For details see the relevant fieldbus instruction. The cable must be placed to the left inside the frequency converter and tied down together with other control wires (see picture).

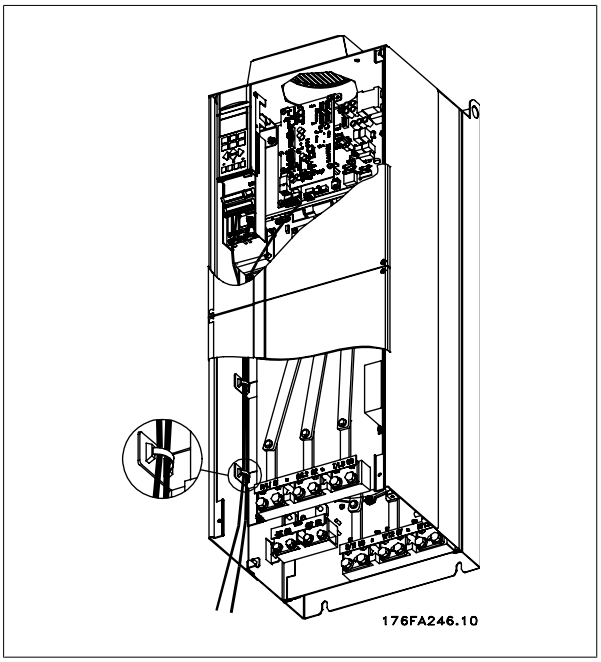


Illustration 3.54: Wire path for control wiring.

In the IP 00 (Chassis) and IP 21 (NEMA 1) units it is also possible to connect the fieldbus from the top of the unit as shown on the picture to the right. On the IP 21 (NEMA 1) unit a cover plate must be removed.
Kit number for fieldbus top connection: 176F1742

Illustration 3.55: Top connection for fieldbus.

Installation of 24 Volt external DC Supply
Torque: 0.5 - 0.6 Nm (5 in-lbs)
Screw size: M3

No.	Function
35 (-), 36 (+)	24 V external DC supply

24 VDC external supply can be used as low-voltage supply to the control card and any option cards installed. This enables full operation of the LCPLCP (including parameter setting) without connection to mains. Please note that a warning of low voltage will be given when 24 VDC has been connected; however, there will be no tripping.

Use 24 VDC supply of type PELV to ensure correct galvanic isolation (type PELV) on the control terminals of the frequency converter.

3.6.21 Access to Control Terminals

All terminals to the control cables are located beneath the LCPLCP. They are accessed by opening the door of the IP21/ 54 version or removing the covers of the IP00 version.

3.6.22 Electrical Installation, Control Terminals

To connect the cable to the terminal:

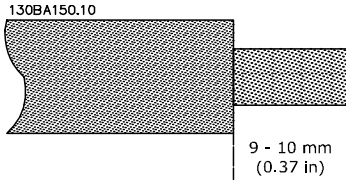
1. Strip insulation by about 9-10 mm
2. Insert a screwdriver[1)] in the square hole.
3. Insert the cable in the adjacent circular hole.
4. Remove the screwdriver. The cable is now mounted in the terminal.

To remove the cable from the terminal:

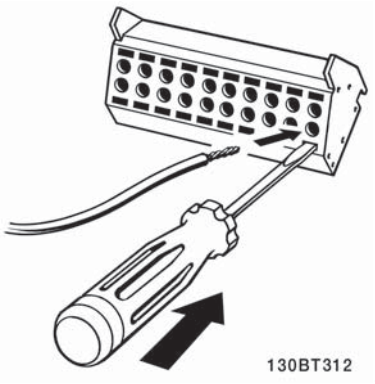
1. Insert a screw driver[1)] in the square hole.
2. Pull out the cable.

[1)] Max. 0.4 x 2.5 mm

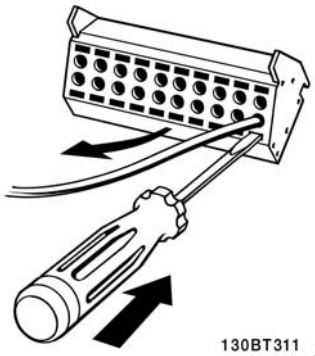
3



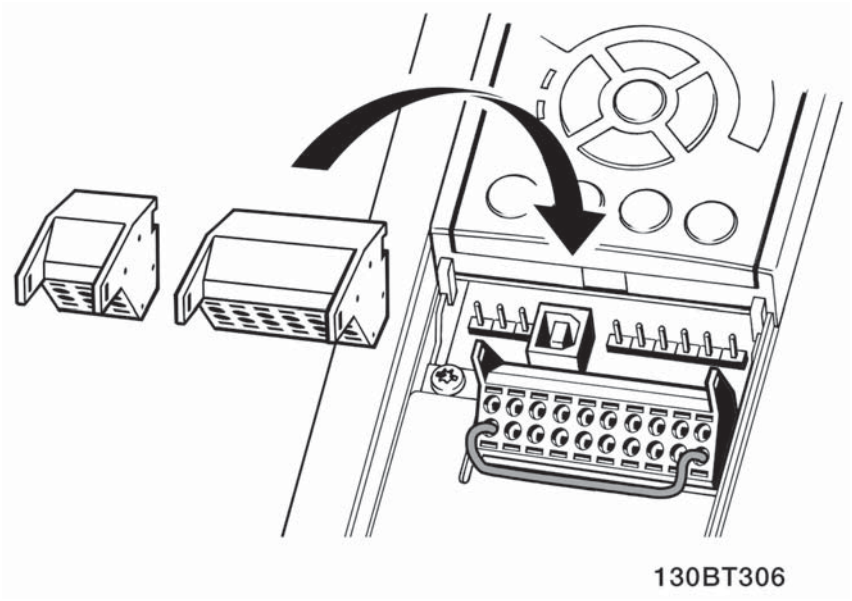
1.



2.



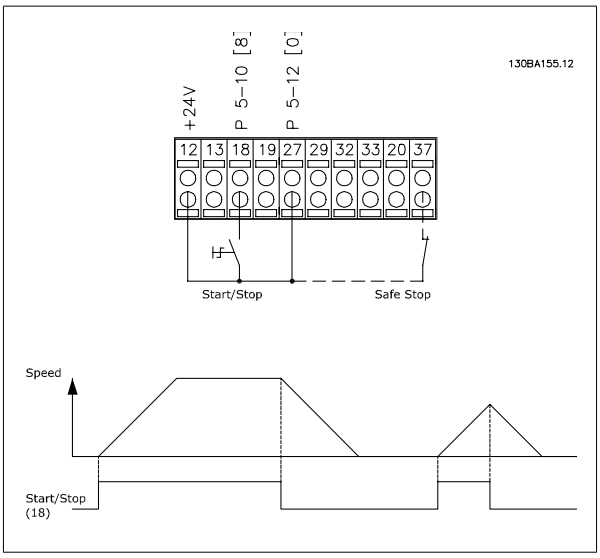
3.



3.7 Connection Examples

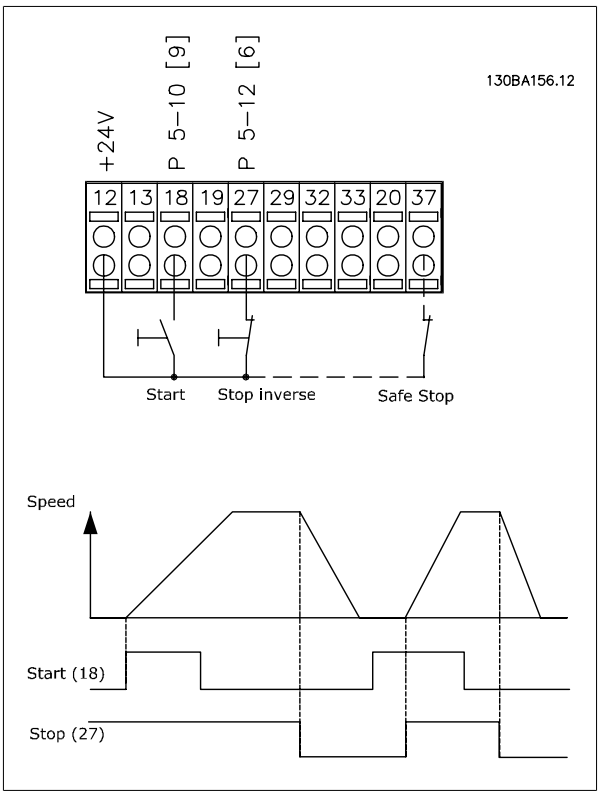
3.7.1 Start / Stop

Terminal 18 = par. [8] *Start*
Terminal 27 = par. [0] *No operation* (Default *coast inverse*)
Terminal 37 = Safe stop



3.7.2 Pulse Start / Stop

Terminal 18 = par. [9] *Latched start*
Terminal 27= par. [6] *Stop inverse*
Terminal 37 = Safe stop



3.7.3 Speed Up/Down

Terminals 29/32 = Speed up/down:.

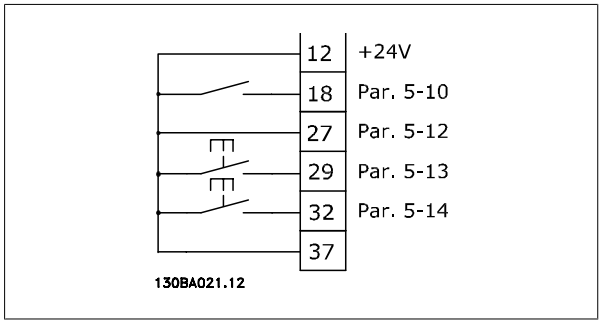
Terminal 18 = par. Start [9] (default)

Terminal 27 = par. Freeze reference [19]

Terminal 29 = par. Speed up [21]

Terminal 32 = par. Speed down [22]

Note: Terminal 29 only in FC x02 (x=series type).



3.7.4 Potentiometer Reference

Voltage reference via a potentiometer:

Reference Source 1 = [1] *Analog input 53* (default)

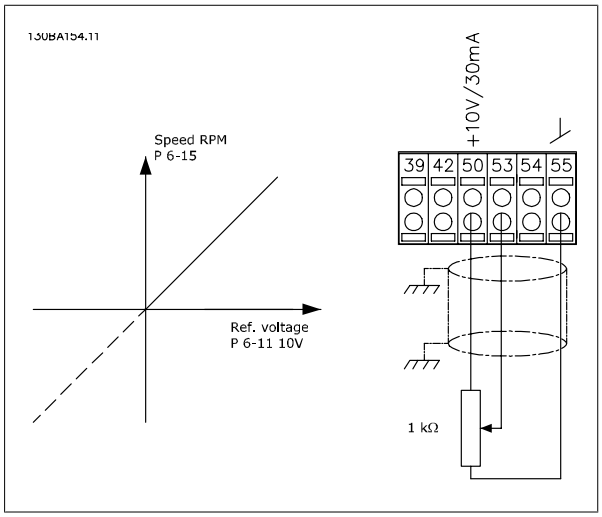
Terminal 53, Low Voltage = 0 Volt

Terminal 53, High Voltage = 10 Volt

Terminal 53, Low Ref./Feedback = 0 RPM

Terminal 53, High Ref./Feedback = 1500 RPM

Switch S201 = OFF (U)



3.8 Electrical Installation - additional

3.8.1 Electrical Installation, Control Cables

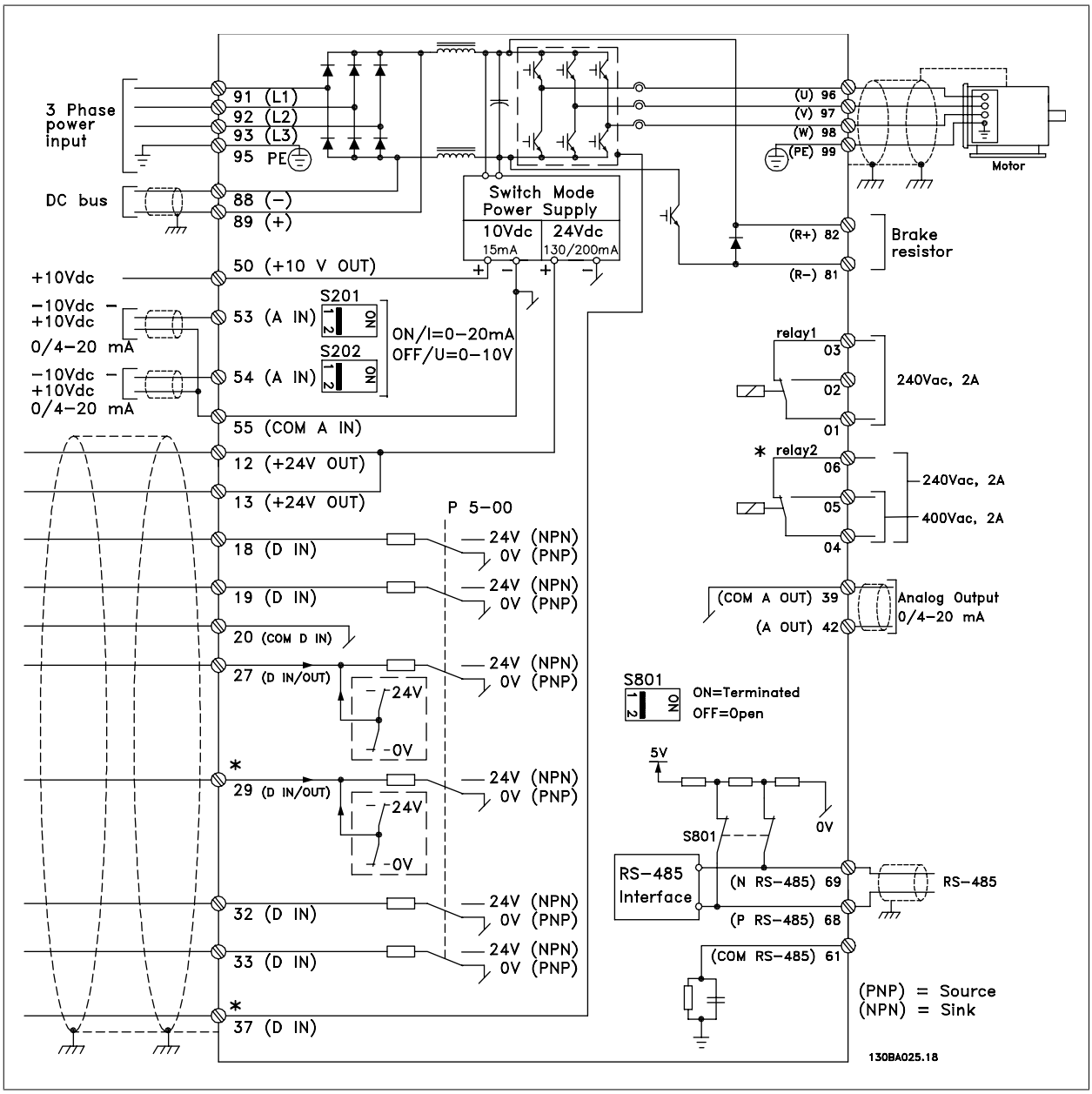


Illustration 3.56: Diagram showing all electrical terminals without options.

Terminal 37 is the input to be used for Safe Stop. For instructions on Safe Stop installation please refer to the section *Safe Stop Installation* in the frequency converter Design Guide. See also sections Safe Stop and Safe Stop Installation.

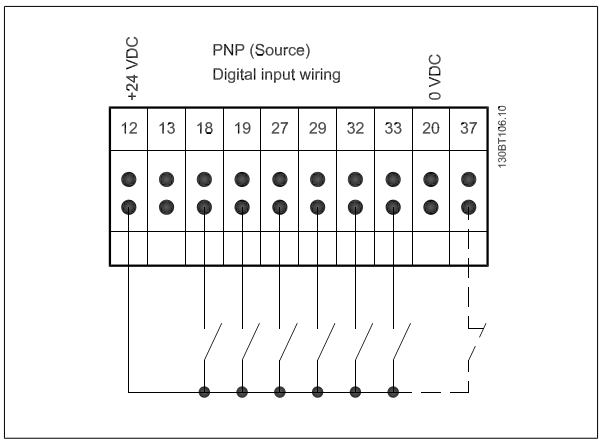
Very long control cables and analogue signals may in rare cases and depending on installation result in 50/60 Hz earth loops due to noise from mains supply cables.

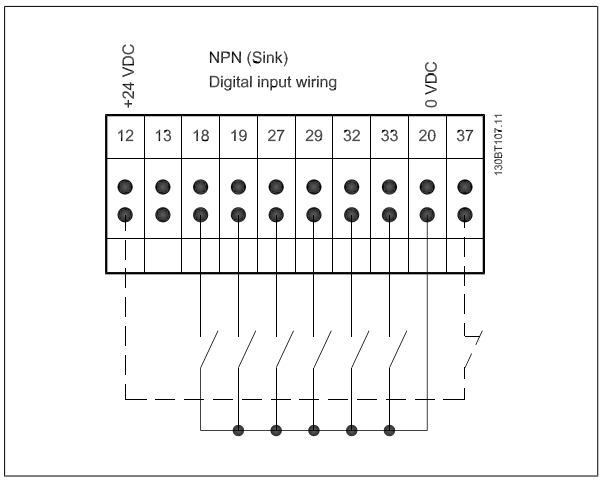
If this occurs, it may be necessary to break the screen or insert a 100 nF capacitor between screen and chassis.

The digital and analog inputs and outputs must be connected separately to the frequency converter common inputs (terminal 20, 55, 39) to avoid earth currents from both groups to affect other groups. For example, switching on the digital input may disturb the analog input signal.

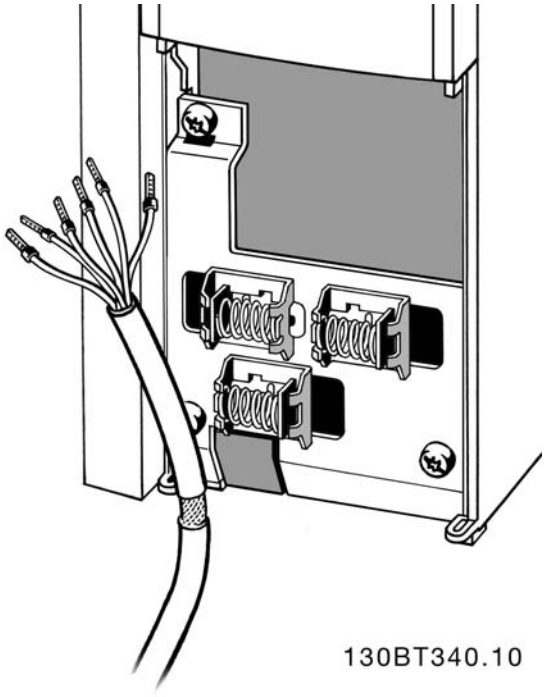
3

Input polarity of control terminals





NB!
Control cables must be screened/armoured.



Connect the wires as described in the Operating Instruction for the frequency converter. Remember to connect the shields in a proper way to ensure optimum electrical immunity.

3.8.2 Switches S201, S202, and S801

Switches S201 (A53) and S202 (A54) are used to select a current (0-20 mA) or a voltage (-10 to 10 V) configuration of the analog input terminals 53 and 54 respectively.

Switch S801 (BUS TER.) can be used to enable termination on the RS-485 port (terminals 68 and 69).

See drawing *Diagram showing all electrical terminals* in section *Electrical Installation.*

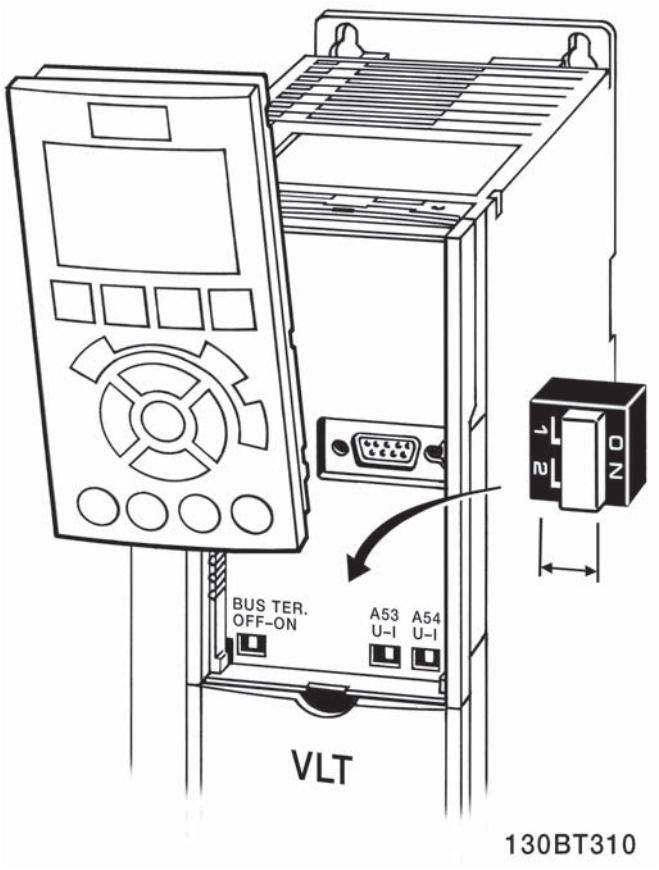
Default setting:

S201 (A53) = OFF (voltage input)

S202 (A54) = OFF (voltage input)

S801 (Bus termination) = OFF

When changing the function of S201, S202 or S801 be careful not to use force for the switch over. It is recommended to remove the LCPLCP fixture (cradle) when operating the switches. The switches must not be operated with power on the frequency converter.



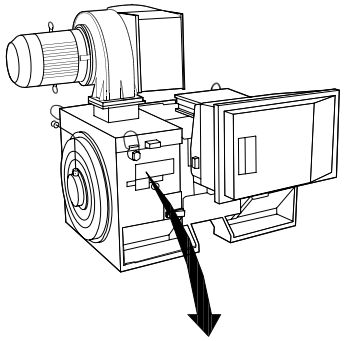
3.9 Final Set-up and Test

To test the set-up and ensure that the frequency converter is running, follow these steps.

Step 1. Locate the motor name plate

3

NB!
The motor is either star- (Y) or delta- connected (Δ). This information is located on the motor name plate data.



THREE PHASE INDUCTION MOTOR							
MOD MCV 315E	Nr. 135189 12 04				IL/IN 6.5		
kW 400	PRIMARY				SF 1.15		
HP 536	V 690	A 410.6	CONN Y		COSf 0.85	40	
mm 1481	V	A	CONN		AMB 40	°C	
Hz 50	V	A	CONN		ALT 1000	m	
DESIGN N	SECONDARY				RISE 80	°C	
DUTY S1	V	A	CONN		ENCLOSURE IP23		
INSUL I	EFFICIENCY %	95.8%	100%	95.8%	75%	WEIGHT 1.83 ton	
⚠ CAUTION							

130BA767.10

Step 2. Enter the motor name plate data in this parameter list.
To access this list first press the [QUICK MENU] key then select "Q2 Quick Setup".

1.	par. par.
2.	par.
3.	par.
4.	par.
5.	par.

Step 3. Activate the Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)

Performing an AMA will ensure optimum performance. The AMA measures the values from the motor model equivalent diagram.

1. Connect terminal 37 to terminal 12 (if terminal 37 is available).
2. Connect terminal 27 to terminal 12 or set par. to 'No function' (par. [0])
3. Activate the AMA par. .
4. Choose between complete or reduced AMA. If a Sine-wave filter is mounted, run only the reduced AMA, or remove the Sine-wave filter during the AMA procedure.
5. Press the [OK] key. The display shows "Press [Hand on] to start".
6. Press the [Hand on] key. A progress bar indicates if the AMA is in progress.

Stop the AMA during operation

1. Press the [OFF] key - the frequency converter enters into alarm mode and the display shows that the AMA was terminated by the user.

Successful AMA

1. The display shows "Press [OK] to finish AMA".
2. Press the [OK] key to exit the AMA state.

Unsuccessful AMA

1. The frequency converter enters into alarm mode. A description of the alarm can be found in the *Warnings and Alarms* chapter.
2. "Report Value" in the [Alarm Log] shows the last measuring sequence carried out by the AMA, before the frequency converter entered alarm mode. This number along with the description of the alarm will assist you in troubleshooting. If you contact DanfossDanfossDanfoss for service, make sure to mention number and alarm description.

NB!
Unsuccessful AMA is often caused by incorrectly registered motor name plate data or a too big difference between the motor power size and the frequency converter power size.

Step 4. Set speed limit and ramp time

par.
par.

Table 3.19: Set up the desired limits for speed and ramp time.

par. or par.
par. or par.

par.
par.

3.10 Additional Connections

3.10.1 Mechanical Brake Control

In hoisting/lowering applications, it is necessary to be able to control an electro-mechanical brake:

- Control the brake using any relay output or digital output (terminal 27 or 29).
- Keep the output closed (voltage-free) as long as the frequency converter is unable to 'support' the motor, for example due to the load being too heavy.
- Select *Mechanical brake control* [32] in par. 5-4* for applications with an electro-mechanical brake.
- The brake is released when the motor current exceeds the preset value in par. .
- The brake is engaged when the output frequency is less than the frequency set in par. or par. , and only if the frequency converter carries out a stop command.

If the frequency converter is in alarm mode or in an over-voltage situation, the mechanical brake immediately cuts in.

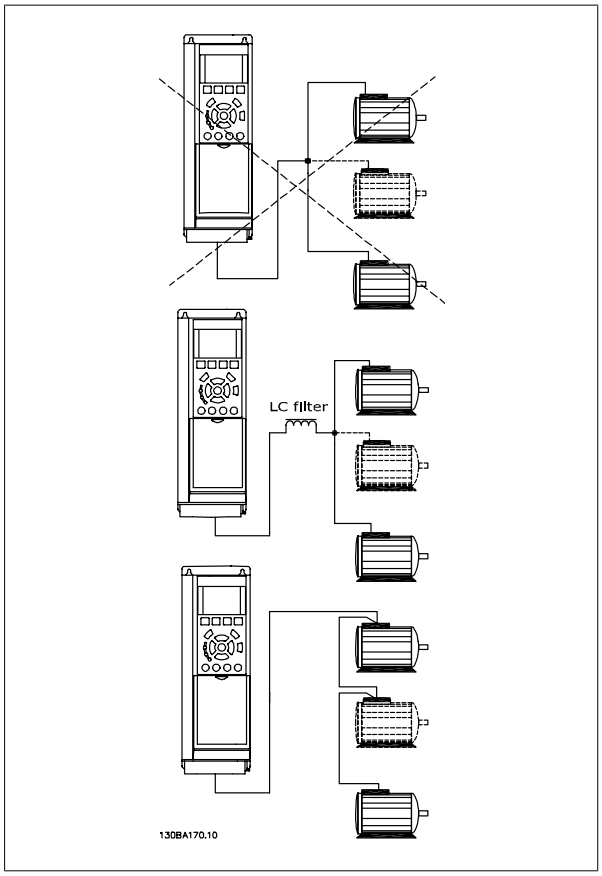
3.10.2 Parallel Connection of Motors

The frequency converter can control several parallel-connected motors. The total current consumption of the motors must not exceed the rated output current $I_{M,N}$ for the frequency converter.

NB!
Installations with cables connected in a common joint as in the illustration below, is only recommended for short cable lengths.

NB!
When motors are connected in parallel, par. cannot be used.

NB!
The electronic thermal relay (ETR) of the frequency converter cannot be used as motor protection for the individual motor in systems with parallel-connected motors. Provide further motor protection by e.g. thermistors in each motor or individual thermal relays (circuit breakers are not suitable as protection).



Problems may arise at start and at low RPM values if motor sizes are widely different because small motors' relatively high ohmic resistance in the stator calls for a higher voltage at start and at low RPM values.

3.10.3 Motor Thermal Protection

The electronic thermal relay in the frequency converter has received UL-approval for single motor protection, when par. is set for *ETR Trip* and par. is set to the rated motor current (see motor name plate).
For thermal motor protection it is also possible to use the MCB 112 PTC Thermistor Card option. This card provides ATEX certificate to protect motors in explosion hazardous areas, Zone 1/21 and Zone 2/22. Please refer to the *Design Guide* for further information.

4 How to operate the frequency converter

4.1 Ways of Operation

4.1.1 Ways of Operation

The frequency converter can be operated in 3 ways:

1. Graphical Local Control Panel (GLCP), see 6.1.2
2. Numeric Local Control Panel (NLCP), see 6.1.3
3. RS-485 serial communication or USB, both for PC connection, see 6.1.4

If the frequency converter is fitted with fieldbus option, please refer to relevant documentation.

4.1.2 How to operate graphical LCP (GLCP)

The following instructions are valid for the GLCP (LCP 102).

The GLCP is divided into four functional groups:

1. Graphical display with Status lines.
2. Menu keys and indicator lights (LED's) - selecting mode, changing parameters and switching between display functions.
3. Navigation keys and indicator lights (LEDs).
4. Operation keys and indicator lights (LEDs).

Graphical display:

The LCD-display is back-lit with a total of 6 alpha-numeric lines. All data is displayed on the LCP which can show up to five operating variables while in [Status] mode.

Display lines:

a. **Status line:** Status messages displaying icons and graphics.

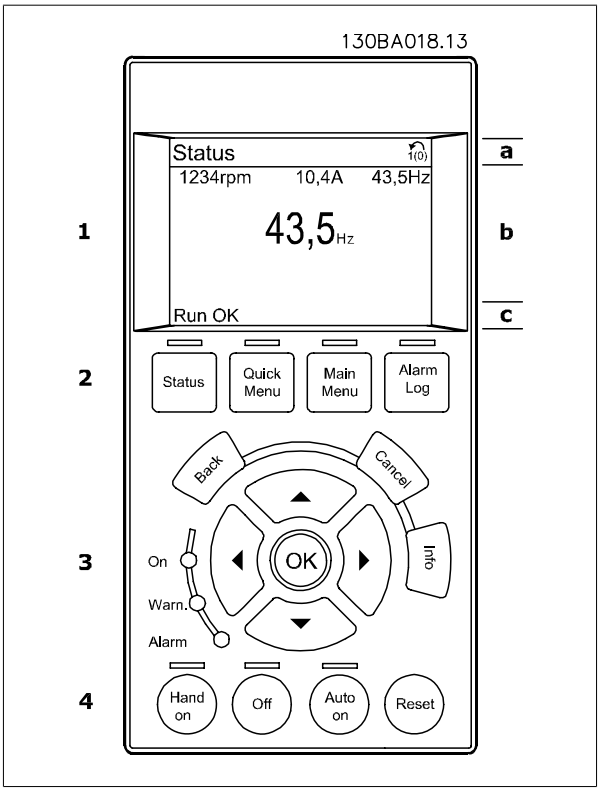
b. **Line 1-2:** Operator data lines displaying data and variables defined or chosen by the user. By pressing the [Status] key, up to one extra line can be added.

c. **Status line:** Status messages displaying text.

The display is divided into 3 sections:

Top section (a)

shows the status when in status mode or up to 2 variables when not in status mode and in the case of Alarm/Warning.



The number of the Active Set-up (selected as the Active Set-up in par. 0-10) is shown. When programming in another Set-up than the Active Set-up, the number of the Set-up being programmed appears to the right in brackets.

Middle section (b)

shows up to 5 variables with related unit, regardless of status. In case of alarm/warning, the warning is shown instead of the variables.

It is possible to toggle between three status read-out displays by pressing the [Status] key.
Operating variables with different formatting are shown in each status screen - see below.

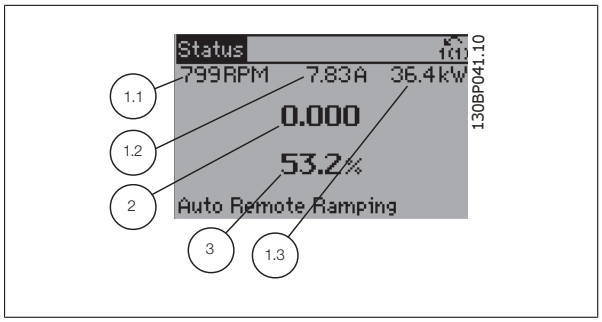
Several values or measurements can be linked to each of the displayed operating variables. The values / measurements to be displayed can be defined via par. 0-20, 0-21, 0-22, 0-23, and 0-24, which can be accessed via [QUICK MENU], "Q3 Function Setups", "Q3-1 General Settings", "Q3-11 Display Settings".

4

Each value / measurement readout parameter selected in par. 0-20 to par. 0-24 has its own scale and number of digits after a possible decimal point. Larger numeric values are displayed with few digits after the decimal point.
Ex.: Current readout
5.25 A; 15.2 A 105 A.

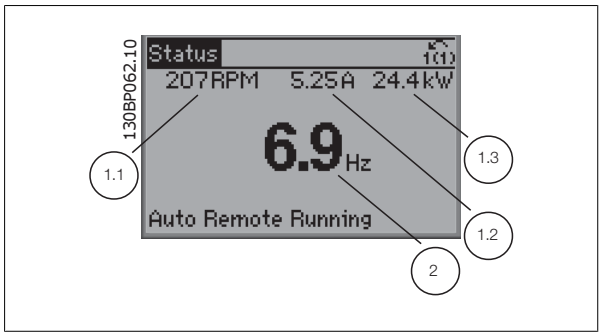
Status display I

This read-out state is standard after start-up or initialization.
Use [INFO] to obtain information about the value/measurement linked to the displayed operating variables (1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 2, and 3).
See the operating variables shown in the display in this illustration. 1.1, 1.2 and 1.3 are shown in small size. 2 and 3 are shown in medium size.



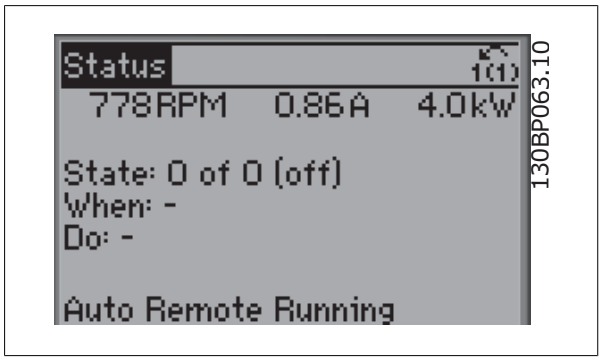
Status display II

See the operating variables (1.1, 1.2, 1.3, and 2) shown in the display in this illustration.
In the example, Speed, Motor current, Motor power and Frequency are selected as variables in the first and second lines.
1.1, 1.2 and 1.3 are shown in small size. 2 is shown in large size.



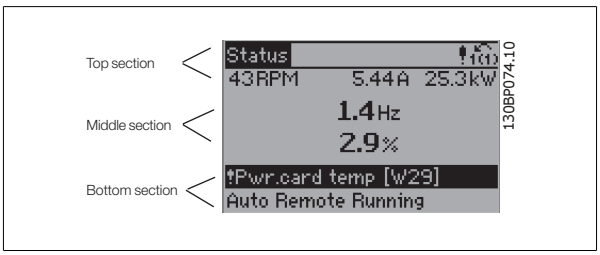
Status display III:

This state displays the event and action of the Smart Logic Control. For further information, see section *Smart Logic Control*.



Bottom section

always shows the state of the frequency converter in Status mode.



Display Contrast Adjustment

Press [status] and [▲] for darker display

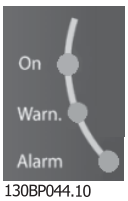
Press [status] and [▼] for brighter display

Indicator lights (LEDs):

If certain threshold values are exceeded, the alarm and/or warning LED lights up. A status and alarm text appear on the control panel.

The On LED is activated when the frequency converter receives power from mains voltage, a DC bus terminal, or an external 24 V supply. At the same time, the back light is on.

- Green LED/On: Control section is working.
- Yellow LED/Warn.: Indicates a warning.
- Flashing Red LED/Alarm: Indicates an alarm.

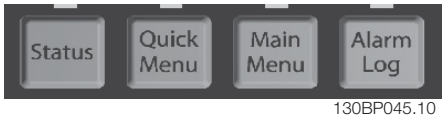


130BP044.10

GLCP keys

Menu keys

The menu keys are divided into functions. The keys below the display and indicator lamps are used for parameter set-up, including choice of display indication during normal operation.



130BP045.10

[Status]

Indicates the status of the frequency converter and/or the motor. 3 different readouts can be chosen by pressing the [Status] key:

5 line readouts, 4 line readouts or Smart Logic Control.

Use **[Status]** for selecting the mode of display or for changing back to Display mode from either the Quick Menu mode, the Main Menu mode or Alarm mode. Also use the [Status] key to toggle single or double read-out mode.

[Quick Menu]

Allows quick set-up of the frequency converter. **The most common functions can be programmed here.**

The [Quick Menu] consists of:

- **Q1: My Personal Menu**
- **Q2: Quick Setup**
- **Q3: Function Setups**
- **Q5: Changes Made**
- **Q6: Loggings**

The Function set-up provides quick and easy access to all parameters required for the majority of water and wastewater applications including variable torque, constant torque, pumps, dossing pumps, well pumps, booster pumps, mixer pumps, aeration blowers and other pump and fan applications. Amongst other features it also includes parameters for selecting which variables to display on the LCP, digital preset speeds, scaling of analog references, closed loop single zone and multi-zone applications and specific functions related to water and wastewater applications.

The Quick Menu parameters can be accessed immediately unless a password has been created via par. 0-60, 0-61, 0-65 or 0-66.

It is possible to switch directly between Quick Menu mode and Main Menu mode.

[Main Menu]

is used for programming all parameters.

The Main Menu parameters can be accessed immediately unless a password has been created via par. 0-60, 0-61, 0-65 or 0-66. For the majority of water and wastewater applications it is not necessary to access the Main Menu parameters but instead the Quick Menu, Quick Setup and Function Setups provides the simplest and quickest access to the typical required parameters.

It is possible to switch directly between Main Menu mode and Quick Menu mode.

Parameter shortcut can be carried out by pressing down the **[Main Menu]** key for 3 seconds. The parameter shortcut allows direct access to any parameter.

[Alarm Log]

displays an Alarm list of the five latest alarms (numbered A1-A5). To obtain additional details about an alarm, use the arrow keys to manoeuvre to the alarm number and press [OK]. Information is displayed about the condition of the frequency converter before it enters the alarm mode.

[Back]

reverts to the previous step or layer in the navigation structure.

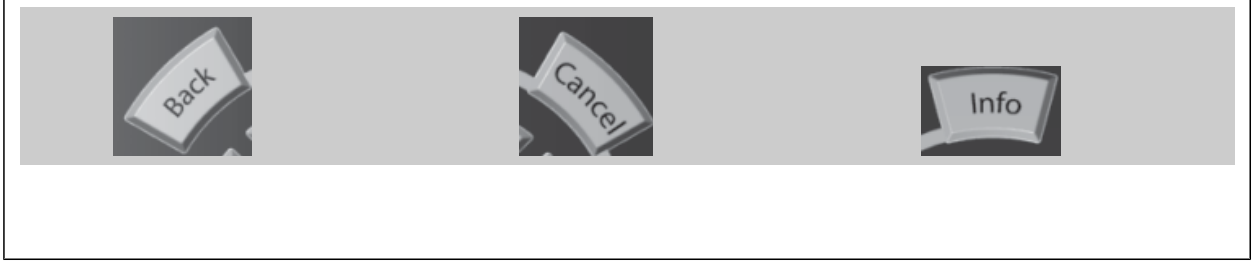
[Cancel]

last change or command will be cancelled as long as the display has not been changed.

[Info]

displays information about a command, parameter, or function in any display window. [Info] provides detailed information when needed.

Exit Info mode by pressing either [Info], [Back], or [Cancel].



Navigation Keys

The four navigation arrows are used to navigate between the different choices available in **[Quick Menu]**, **[Main Menu]** and **[Alarm Log]**. Use the keys to move the cursor.

[OK]

is used for choosing a parameter marked by the cursor and for enabling the change of a parameter.

130BT117.10

Operation Keys

for local control are found at the bottom of the control panel.

130BP046.10

[Hand On]

enables control of the frequency converter via the GLCP. [Hand on] also starts the motor, and it is now possible to give the motor speed reference by means of the arrow keys. The key can be *Enabled* [1] or *Disabled* [0] via par. *0-40 [Hand on] Key on LCP.*

The following control signals will still be active when [Hand on] is activated:

- [Hand on] - [Off] - [Auto on]
- Reset
- Coasting stop inverse (motor coasting to stop)

- Reversing
- Set-up select lsb - Set-up select msb
- Stop command from serial communication
- Quick stop
- DC brake

NB!
External stop signals activated by means of control signals or a serial bus will override a "start" command via the LCP.

[Off]
stops the connected motor. The key can be *Enabled* [1] or *Disabled* [0] via par. *0-41 [Off] key on LCP.* If no external stop function is selected and the [Off] key is inactive the motor can only be stopped by disconnecting the mains supply.

[Auto On]
enables the frequency converter to be controlled via the control terminals and/or serial communication. When a start signal is applied on the control terminals and/or the bus, the frequency converter will start. The key can be *Enabled* [1] or *Disabled* [0] via par. *0-42 [Auto on] key on LCP.*

NB!
An active HAND-OFF-AUTO signal via the digital inputs has higher priority than the control keys [Hand on] – [Auto on].

[Reset]
is used for resetting the frequency converter after an alarm (trip). The key can be *Enabled* [1] or *Disabled* [0] via par. 0-43 *Reset Keys on LCP*.

The parameter shortcut
can be carried out by holding down the [Main Menu] key for 3 seconds. The parameter shortcut allows direct access to any parameter.

4.1.3 How to operate numeric LCPLCP (NLCP)

The following instructions are valid for the NLCP (LCP 101).

The control panel is divided into four functional groups:

1. Numeric display.
2. Menu key and indicator lights (LEDs) - changing parameters and switching between display functions.
3. Navigation keys and indicator lights (LEDs).
4. Operation keys and indicator lights (LEDs).

NB!
Parameter copy is not possible with Numeric Local Control Panel (LCP101).

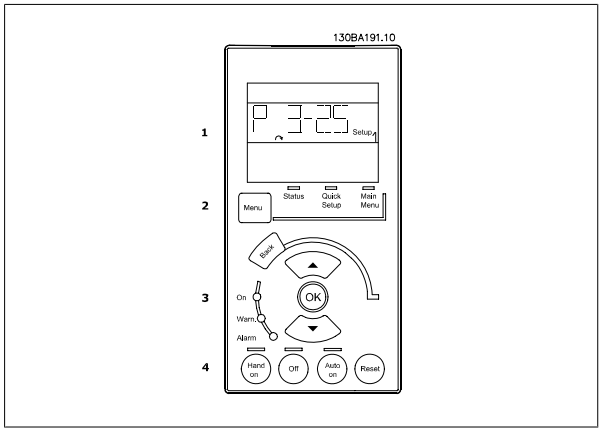


Illustration 4.1: Numerical LCP (NLCP)

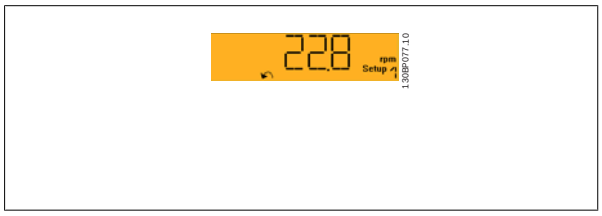


Illustration 4.2: Status display example

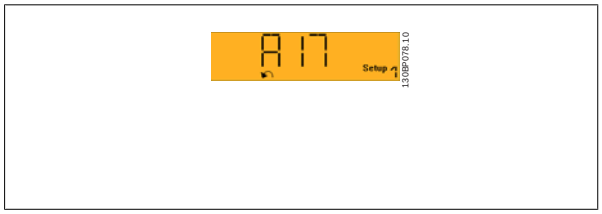


Illustration 4.3: Alarm display example

Select one of the following modes:

Status Mode: Displays the status of the frequency converter or the motor.
If an alarm occurs, the NLCP automatically switches to status mode.
A number of alarms can be displayed.

Quick Setup or Main Menu Mode: Display parameters and parameter settings.

Indicator lights (LEDs):

- Green LED/On: Indicates if control section is on.
- Yellow LED/Wrn.: Indicates a warning.
- Flashing red LED/Alarm: Indicates an alarm.

Menu key

[Menu] Select one of the following modes:

- Status
- Quick Setup
- Main Menu

Main Menu
is used for programming all parameters.
The parameters can be accessed immediately unless a password has been created via par. 0-60 Main *Menu Password*, par. 0-61 Access *to Main Menu w/o Password*, par. 0-65 Personal *Menu Password* or par. 0-66 Access *to Personal Menu w/o Password*.
Quick Setup is used to set up the frequency converter using only the most essential parameters.
The parameter values can be changed using the up/down arrows when the value is flashing.
Select Main Menu by pressing the [Menu] key a number of times until the Main Menu LED is lit.
Select the parameter group [xx-__] and press [OK]
Select the parameter [__-xx] and press [OK]
If the parameter is an array parameter select the array number and press [OK]
Select the wanted data value and press [OK]

Navigation Keys

[Back]

for stepping backwards

Arrow [▲] [▼]

keys are used for manoeuvring between parameter groups, parameters and within parameters

[OK]

is used for choosing a parameter marked by the cursor and for enabling the change of a parameter.

Illustration 4.4: Display example

Operation Keys

Keys for local control are found at the bottom of the control panel.

Illustration 4.5: Operation keys of the numerical LCP (NLCP)

[Hand on]

enables control of the frequency converter via the LCPLCP. [Hand on] also starts the motor and it is now possible to enter the motor speed data by means of the arrow keys. The key can be *Enabled* [1] or *Disabled* [0] via par. 0-40 [Hand *on] Key on LCP*.

External stop signals activated by means of control signals or a serial bus will override a 'start' command via the LCPLCP.

The following control signals will still be active when [Hand on] is activated:

- [Hand on] - [Off] - [Auto on]
- Reset
- Coasting stop inverse
- Reversing
- Set-up select lsb - Set-up select msb
- Stop command from serial communication
- Quick stop
- DC brake

[Off]

stops the connected motor. The key can be *Enabled* [1] or *Disabled* [0] via par. 0-41 [Off] *Key on LCP*.

If no external stop function is selected and the [Off] key is inactive the motor can be stopped by disconnecting the mains supply.

[Auto on]

enables the frequency converter to be controlled via the control terminals and/or serial communication. When a start signal is applied on the control terminals and/or the bus, the frequency converter will start. The key can be *Enabled* [1] or *Disabled* [0] via par. 0-42 [Auto *on] Key on LCP*.

NB!

An active HAND-OFF-AUTO signal via the digital inputs has higher priority than the control keys [Hand on] [Auto on].

[Reset]

is used for resetting the frequency converter after an alarm (trip). The key can be *Enabled* [1] or *Disabled* [0] via par. 0-43 [Reset] *Key on LCP*.

4.1.4 Changing Data

1. Press [Quick Menu] or [Main Menu] key.
2. Use [▲] and [▼] keys keys to find parameter group to edit.
3. Press [OK] key.
4. Use [▲] and [▼] keys to find parameter to edit.
5. Press [OK] key.
6. Use [▲] and [▼] keys to select correct parameter setting. Or, to move to digits within a number, use keys. Cursor indicates digit selected to change. [▲] key increases the value, [▼] key decreases the value.
7. Press [Cancel] key to disregard change, or press [OK] key to accept change and enter new setting.

4

4.1.5 Changing a Text Value

If the selected parameter is a text value, change the text value by means of the up/down navigation keys.
The up key increases the value, and the down key decreases the value. Place the cursor on the value to be saved and press [OK].

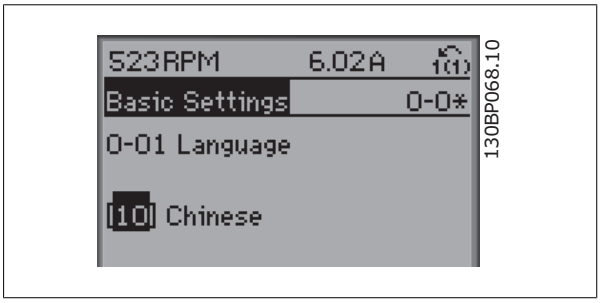


Illustration 4.6: Display example.

4.1.6 Changing a Group of Numeric Data Values

If the chosen parameter represents a numeric data value, change the chosen data value by means of the <> navigation keys as well as the up/down navigation keys. Use the <> navigation keys to move the cursor horizontally.

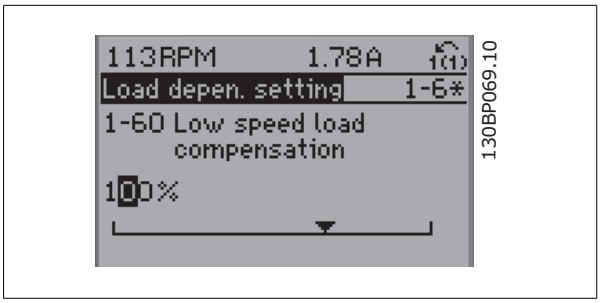


Illustration 4.7: Display example.

Use the up/down navigation keys to change the data value. The up key enlarges the data value, and the down key reduces the data value. Place the cursor on the value to be saved and press [OK].

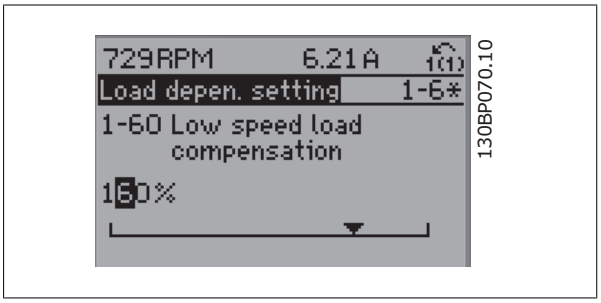


Illustration 4.8: Display example.

4.1.7 Changing of Data Value, Step-by-Step

Certain parameters can be changed step by step or infinitely variably. This applies to par. 1-20 *Motor Power [kW]*, par. 1-22 *Motor Voltage* and par. 1-23 *Motor Frequency*.
The parameters are changed both as a group of numeric data values and as numeric data values infinitely variably.

4.1.8 Read-out and Programming of Indexed Parameters

Parameters are indexed when placed in a rolling stack.
par. 15-30 Alarm *Log: Error Code* to par. 15-32 Alarm *Log: Time* contain a fault log which can be read out. Choose a parameter, press [OK], and use the up/down navigation keys to scroll through the value log.

Use par. 3-10 *Preset Reference* as another example:
Choose the parameter, press [OK], and use the up/down navigation keys keys to scroll through the indexed values. To change the parameter value, select the indexed value and press [OK]. Change the value by using the up/down keys. Press [OK] to accept the new setting. Press [Cancel] to abort. Press [Back] to leave the parameter.

4.1.9 Tips and tricks

*	For the majority of water and wastewater applications the Quick Menu, Quick Setup and Function Setups provides the simplest and quickest access to all the typical parameters required.
*	Whenever possible, performing an AMA, will ensure best shaft performance
*	Contrast of the display can be adjusted by pressing [Status] and [▲] for darker display or by pressing [Status] and [▼] for brighter dispaly
*	Under [Quick Menu] and [Changes Made] all parameters that have been changed from factory settings are displayed
*	Press and hold [Main Menu] key for 3 seconds for access to any parameter
*	For service purposes it is recommended to copy all parameters to the LCP, see par 0-50 for further information

Table 4.1: Tips and tricks

4.1.10 Quick Transfer of Parameter Settings when using GLCP

Once the set-up of a frequency converter is complete, it is recommended to store (backup) the parameter settings in the GLCPkeypad or on a PC via MCT 10 Set-up Software Tool.

NB!
Stop the motor before performing any of these operations.

Data storage in LCPLCP:

1. Go to par. 0-50 LCP *Copy*
2. Press the [OK] key
3. Select "All to LCPLCP"
4. Press the [OK] key

All parameter settings are now stored in the GLCP indicated by the progress bar. When 100% is reached, press [OK].

The GLCP can now be connected to another frequency converter and the parameter settings copied to this frequency converter.

Data transfer from LCPLCP to Frequency converter:

1. Go to par. 0-50 LCP *Copy*
2. Press the [OK] key
3. Select "All from LCPLCP"
4. Press the [OK] key

The parameter settings stored in the GLCP are now transferred to the frequency converter indicated by the progress bar. When 100% is reached, press [OK].

4.1.11 Initialisation to Default Settings

There are two ways to initialise the frequency converter to default: Recommended initialisation and manual initialisation.
Please be aware that they have different impact according to the below description.

Recommended initialisation (via par. 14-22 Operation *Mode*)

1. Select par. 14-22 Operation *Mode*
2. Press [OK]
3. Select "Initialisation" (for NLCP select "2")
4. Press [OK]
5. Remove power to unit and wait for display to turn off.
6. Reconnect power and the frequency converter is reset. Note that first start-up takes a few more seconds.
7. Press [Reset]

par. 14-22 Operation *Mode* initialises all except:
par. 14-50 RFI *Filter*
par.
par.
par. 8-32 Baud *Rate*
par. 8-35 Minimum *Response Delay*
par.
par. 8-37 Maximum *Inter-Char Delay*
par. 15-00 Operating *Hours* to par. 15-05 Over *Volt's*
par. 15-20 Historic *Log: Event* to par. 15-22 Historic *Log: Time*
par. 15-30 Alarm *Log: Error Code* to par. 15-32 Alarm *Log: Time*

NB!
Parameters selected in par. 0-25 My *Personal Menu*, will stay present, with default factory setting.

Manual initialisation

NB!
When carrying out manual initialisation, serial communication, RFI filter settings and fault log settings are reset.
Removes parameters selected in par. 0-25 My *Personal Menu*.

1. Disconnect from mains and wait until the display turns off.

2a. Press [Status] - [Main Menu] - [OK] at the same time while power up for Graphical LCP (GLCP).

2b. Press [Menu] while power up for LCP 101, Numerical Display

3. Release the keys after 5 s.

4. The frequency converter is now programmed according to default settings.

This parameter initialises all except:
par. 15-00 Operating *Hours*
par. 15-03 Power *Up's*
par. 15-04 Over *Temp's*
par. 15-05 Over *Volt's*

4.1.12 RS-485 Bus Connection

One or more frequency converters can be connected to a controller (or master) using the RS-485 standard interface. Terminal 68 is connected to the P signal (TX+, RX+), while terminal 69 is connected to the N signal (TX-,RX-).

If more than one frequency converter is connected to a master, use parallel connections.

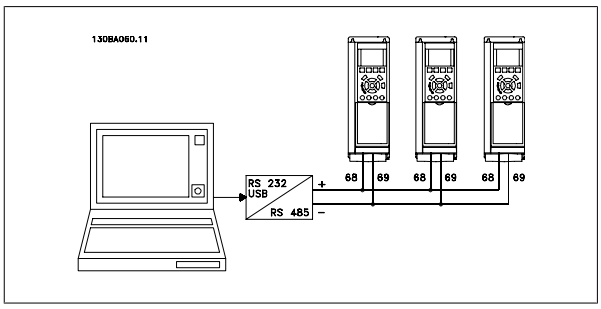


Illustration 4.9: Connection example.

In order to avoid potential equalizing currents in the screen, earth the cable screen via terminal 61, which is connected to the frame via an RC-link.

Bus termination

The RS-485 bus must be terminated by a resistor network at both ends. If the drive is the first or the last device in the RS-485 loop, set the switch S801 on the control card for ON.

For more information, see the paragraph *Switches S201, S202, and S801*.

4.1.13 How to Connect a PC to the frequency converter

To control or program the frequency converter from a PC, install the PC-based Configuration Tool MCT 10.

The PC is connected via a standard (host/device) USB cable, or via the RS-485 interface as shown in the VLT HVAC Drive *Design Guide, chapter How to Install > Installation of misc. connections*.

NB!

The USB connection is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals. The USB connection is connected to protection earth on the frequency converter. Use only isolated laptop as PC connection to the USB connector on the frequency converter.

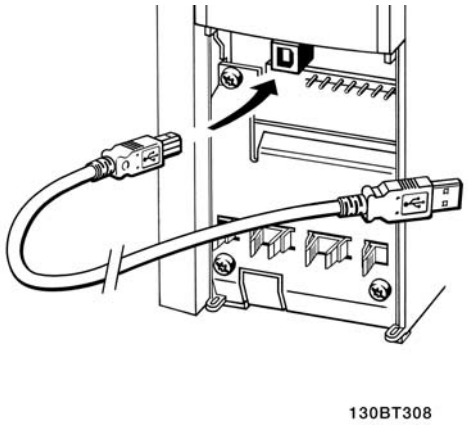


Illustration 4.10: For control cable connections, see section on *Control Terminals*.

4.1.14 PC Software tools

PC-based Configuration Tool MCT 10

All Frequency converters are equipped with a serial communication port. DanfossDanfossDanfoss provides a PC tool for communication between PC and frequency converter, PC-based Configuration Tool MCT 10. Please check the section on *Available Literature* for detailed information on this tool.

MCT 10 Set-up Software

MCT 10 has been designed as an easy to use interactive tool for setting parameters in our frequency converters. The software can be downloaded from the DanfossDanfossDanfoss internet site *http://www.DanfossDanfossDanfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Softwaredownload/DDPC+Software+Program.htm*.

The MCT 10 Set-up software will be useful for:

- Planning a communication network off-line. MCT 10 contains a complete frequency converter database
- Commissioning frequency converters on line
- Saving settings for all frequency converters
- Replacing a frequency converter in a network
- Simple and accurate documentation of frequency converter settings after commissioning.
- Expanding an existing network
- Future developed frequency converters will be supported

MCT 10 set-up software supports Profibus DP-V1 via a Master class 2 connection. It makes it possible to on line read/write parameters in a frequency converter via the Profibus network. This will eliminate the need for an extra communication network.

Save Frequency Converter Settings:

1. Connect a PC to the unit via USB com port. (Note: Use a PC, which is isolated from the mains, in conjunction with the USB port. Failure to do so may damage equipment.)
2. Open MCT 10 Set-up Software
3. Choose "Read from drive"
4. Choose "Save as"

All parameters are now stored in the PC.

Load Frequency Converter Settings:

1. Connect a PC to the frequency converter via USB com port
2. Open MCT 10 Set-up software
3. Choose "Open"– stored files will be shown
4. Open the appropriate file
5. Choose "Write to drive"

All parameter settings are now transferred to the frequency converter.

A separate manual forMCT 10 Set-up Software is available: *MG.10.Rx.yy*.

The MCT 10 Set-up Software Modules

The following modules are included in the software package:

	**MCT Set-up 10 Software** Setting parameters Copy to and from frequency converters Documentation and print out of parameter settings incl. diagrams
	Ext. User Interface Preventive Maintenance Schedule Clock settings Timed Action Programming Smart Logic Controller Set-up

Ordering number:

Please order the CD containing MCT 10 Set-up Software using code number 130B1000.

MCT 10 can also be downloaded from the DanfossDanfossDanfoss Internet: *WWW.DANFOSS.COM, Business Area: Motion Controls*.

5 How to programme the frequency converter

5.1 How to programme

5.1.1 Parameter Set-Up

Overview of parameter groups

Group	Title	Function
0-	Operation / Display	Parameters related to the fundamental functions of the frequency converter, function of the LCP buttons and configuration of the LCP display.
1-	Load / Motor	Parameter group for motor settings.
2-	Brakes	Parameter group for setting brake features in the frequency converter.
3-	Reference / Ramps	Parameters for reference handling, definitions of limitations, and configuration of the reaction of the frequency converter to changes.
4-	Limits / Warnings	Parameter group for configuring limits and warnings.
5-	Digital In/Out	Parameter group for configuring the digital inputs and outputs.
6-	Analog In/Out	Parameter group for configuration of the analog inputs and outputs.
8-	Communication and Options	Parameter group for configuring communications and options.
9-	Profibus	Parameter group for Profibus-specific parameters.
10-	DeviceNet Fieldbus	Parameter group for DeviceNet-specific parameters.
11-	LonWorks	Parameter group for LonWorks parameters
13-	Smart Logic	Parameter group for Smart Logic Control
14-	Special Functions	Parameter group for configuring special frequency converter functions.
15-	Drive Information	Parameter group containing frequency converter information such as operating data, hardware configuration and software versions.
16-	Data Readouts	Parameter group for data read-outs, e.g. actual references, voltages, control, alarm, warning and status words.
18-	Info and Readouts	This parameter group contains the last 10 Preventive Maintenance logs.
20-	Drive Closed Loop	This parameter group is used for configuring the closed loop PID Controller that controls the output frequency of the unit.
21-	Extended Closed Loop	Parameters for configuring the three Extended Closed Loop PID Controllers.
22-	Application Functions	These parameters monitor water applications.
23-	Time-based Functions	These parameters are for actions needed to be performed on a daily or weekly basis, e.g. different references for working hours/non-working hours.
25-	Basic Cascade Controller Functions	Parameters for configuring the Basic Cascade Controller for sequence control of multiple pumps.
26-	Analog I/0 Option MCB 109	Parameters for configuring the Analog I/0 Option MCB 109.
27-	Extended Cascade Control	Parameters for configuring the Extended Cascade Control.
29-	Water Application Functions	Parameters for setting water specific functions.
31-	Bypass Option	Parameters for configuring the Bypass Option

Table 5.1: Parameter Groups

Parameter descriptions and selections are displayed on the graphic (GLCP) or numeric (NLCP) in the display area. (See Section 5 for details.) Access the parameters by pressing the [Quick Menu] or [Main Menu] key on the control panel. The quick menu is used primarily for commissioning the unit at start-up by providing those parameters necessary to start operation. The main menu provides access to all parameters for detailed application programming.

All digital input/output and analog input/output terminals are multifunctional. All terminals have factory default functions suitable for the majority of water applications but if other special functions are required, they must be programmed in parameter group 5 or 6.

5.1.2 Quick Menu Mode

The GLCP provides access to all parameters listed under the Quick Menus. To set parameters using the [Quick Menu] button:

Pressing [Quick Menu] the list indicates the different areas contained in the Quick menu.

Efficient Parameter Set-up for Water Applications

The parameters can easily be set up for the vast majority of the water and wastewater applications only by using the **[Quick Menu]**.

The optimum way to set parameters through the [Quick Menu] is by following the below steps:

1. Press [Quick Setup] for selecting basic motor settings, ramp times, etc.
2. Press [Function Setups] for setting up the required functionality of the frequency converter - if not already covered by the settings in [Quick Setup].
3. Choose between *General Settings*, *Open Loop Settings* and *Closed Loop Settings.*

It is recommended to do the set-up in the order listed.

Illustration 5.1: Quick menu view.

Par.	Designation	[Units]
0-01	Language	
1-20	Motor Power	[kW]
1-22	Motor Voltage	[V]
1-23	Motor Frequency	[Hz]
1-24	Motor Current	[A]
1-25	Motor Nominal Speed	[RPM]
3-41	Ramp 1 Ramp up Time	[s]
3-42	Ramp 1 Ramp down Time	[s]
4-11	Motor Speed Low Limit	[RPM]
4-13	Motor Speed High Limit	[RPM]
1-29	Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)	

Table 5.2: Quick Setup parameters

If *No Operation* is selected in terminal 27 no connection to +24 V on terminal 27 is necessary to enable start.
If *Coast Inverse* (factory default value) is selected in Terminal 27, a connection to +24V is necessary to enable start.

NB!
For detailed parameter descriptions, please see the following section on *Commonly Used Parameters - Explanations*.

5.1.3 Q1 My Personal Menu

Parameters defined by the user can be stored in Q1 My Personal Menu.

Select *My Personal Menu* to display only the parameters, which have been pre-selected and programmed as personal parameters. For example, a pump or equipment OEM may have pre-programmed these to be in My Personal Menu during factory commissioning to make on site commissioning / fine tuning simpler.. These parameters are selected in par. 0-25 *My Personal Menu*. Up to 20 different parameters can be defined in this menu.

Q1 My Personal Menu
20-21 Setpoint 1
20-93 PID Proportional Gain
20-94 PID Integral Time

5.1.4 Q2 Quick Setup

The parameters in Q2 Quick Setup are the basic parameters which are always needed to set-up the frequency converter to operation.

Q2 Quick Setup	
Parameter number and name	**Unit**
0-01 Language	
1-20 Motor Power	kW
1-22 Motor Voltage	V
1-23 Motor Frequency	Hz
1-24 Motor Current	A
1-25 Motor Nominal Speed	RPM
3-41 Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time	s
3-42 Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time	s
4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit	RPM
4-13 Motor Speed High Limit	RPM
1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)	

5.1.5 Q3 Function Setups

The Function Setup provides quick and easy access to all parameters required for the majority of water and wastewater applications including variable torque, constant torque, pumps, dossing pumps, well pumps, booster pumps, mixer pumps, aeration blowers and other pump and fan applications. Amongst other features it also includes parameters for selecting which variables to display on the LCP, digital preset speeds, scaling of analog references, closed loop single zone and multi-zone applications and specific functions related to water and wastewater applications.

How to access Function Set-up - example

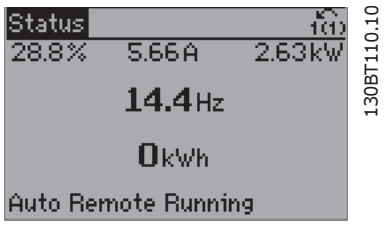


Illustration 5.2: Step 1: Turn on the frequency converter (On LED lights)

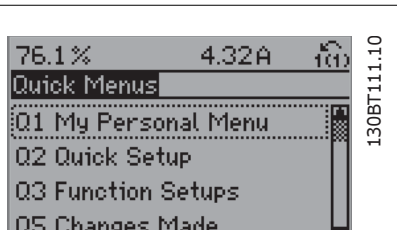


Illustration 5.3: Step 2: Press the [Quick Menus] button (Quick Menus choices appear).

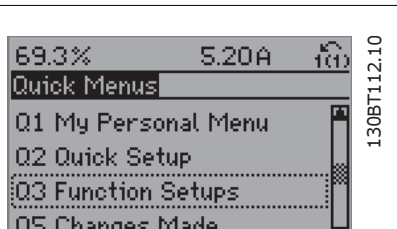


Illustration 5.4: Step 3: Use the up/down navigation keys to scroll down to Function Setups. Press [OK].

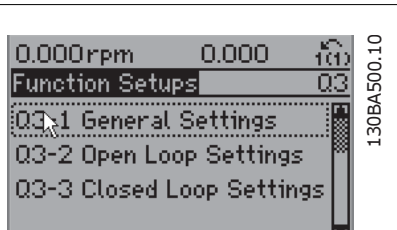


Illustration 5.5: Step 4: Function Setups choices appear. Choose 03-1 *General Settings*. Press [OK].

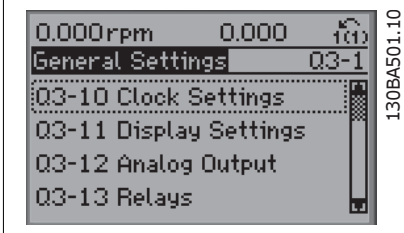


Illustration 5.6: Step 5: Use the up/down navigation keys to scroll down to i.e. 03-12 *Analog Outputs*. Press [OK].

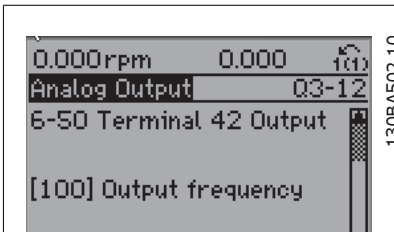


Illustration 5.7: Step 6: Choose parameter 6-50 *Terminal 42 Output*. Press [OK].

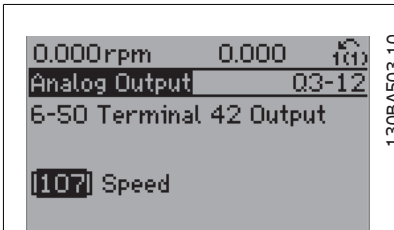


Illustration 5.8: Step 7: Use the up/down navigation keys to select between the different choices. Press [OK].

The Function Setup parameters are grouped in the following way:

Q3-1 General Settings			
Q3-10 Clock Settings	**Q3-11 Display Settings**	**Q3-12 Analog Output**	**Q3-13 Relays**
0-70 Set Date and Time	0-20 Display Line 1.1 Small	6-50 Terminal 42 Output	Relay 1 ⇒ 5-40 Function Relay
0-71 Date Format	0-21 Display Line 1.2 Small	6-51 Terminal 42 Output Min Scale	Relay 2 ⇒ 5-40 Function Relay
0-72 Time Format	0-22 Display Line 1.3 Small	6-52 Terminal 42 Output Max Scale	Option relay 7 ⇒ 5-40 Function Relay
0-74 DST/Summertime	0-23 Display Line 2 Large		Option relay 8 ⇒ 5-40 Function Relay
0-76 DST/Summertime Start	0-24 Display Line 3 Large		Option relay 9 ⇒ 5-40 Function Relay
0-77 DST/Summertime End	0-37 Display Text 1		
	0-38 Display Text 2		
	0-39 Display Text 3		

Q3-2 Open Loop Settings	
Q3-20 Digital Reference	**Q3-21 Analog Reference**
3-02 Minimum Reference	3-02 Minimum Reference
3-03 Maximum Reference	3-03 Maximum Reference
3-10 Preset Reference	6-10 Terminal 53 Low Voltage
5-13 Terminal 29 Digital Input	6-11 Terminal 53 High Voltage
5-14 Terminal 32 Digital Input	6-14 Terminal 53 Low Ref/Feedb. Value
5-15 Terminal 33 Digital Input	6-15 Terminal 53 High Ref/Feedb. Value

Q3-3 Closed Loop Settings	
Q3-30 Feedback Settings	**Q3-31 PID Settings**
1-00 Configuration Mode	20-81 PID Normal/Inverse Control
20-12 Reference/Feedb.Unit	20-82 PID Start Speed [RPM]
3-02 Minimum Reference	20-21 Setpoint 1
3-03 Maximum Reference	20-93 PID Proportional Gain
6-20 Terminal 54 Low Voltage	20-94 PID Integral Time
6-21 Terminal 54 High Voltage	
6-24 Terminal 54 Low Ref/Feedb Value	
6-25 Terminal 54 High Ref/Feedb Value	
6-00 Live Zero Timeout Time	
6-01 Live Zero Timeout Function	

5.1.6 Q5 Changes Made

Q5 Changes Made can be used for fault finding.

Select *Changes made* to get information about:

- the last 10 changes. Use the up/down navigation keys to scroll between the last 10 changed parameters.
- the changes made since default setting.

Select *Loggings* to get information about the display line read-outs. The information is shown as graphs.
Only display parameters selected in par. 0-20 and par. 0-24 can be viewed. It is possible to store up to 120 samples in the memory for later reference.

Please notice that the parameters listed in the below tables for Q5 only serve as examples as they will vary depending on the programming of the particular frequency converter.

Q5-1 Last 10 Changes
20-94 PID Integral Time
20-93 PID Proportional Gain

Q5-2 Since Factory Setting
20-93 PID Proportional Gain
20-94 PID Integral Time

Q5-3 Input Assignments
Analog Input 53
Analog Input 54

5.1.7 Q6 Loggings

Q6 Loggings can be used for fault finding.

Please notice that the parameters listed in the below table for Q6 only serve as examples as they will vary depending on the programming of the particular frequency converter.

Q6 Loggings
Reference
Analog Input 53
Motor Current
Frequency
Feedback
Energy Log
Trending Cont Bin
Trending Timed Bin
Trending Comparison

5.1.8 Main Menu Mode

Both the GLCP and NLCP provide access to the main menu mode. Select the Main Menu mode by pressing the [Main Menu] key. Illustration 6.2 shows the resulting read-out, which appears on the display of the GLCP. Lines 2 through 5 on the display show a list of parameter groups which can be chosen by toggling the up and down buttons.

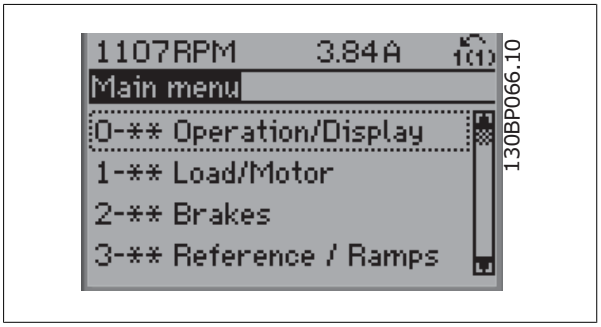


Illustration 5.9: Display example.

5

Each parameter has a name and number which remain the same regardless of the programming mode. In the Main Menu mode, the parameters are divided into groups. The first digit of the parameter number (from the left) indicates the parameter group number.

All parameters can be changed in the Main Menu. The configuration of the unit (par. 1-00 *Configuration Mode*) will determine other parameters available for programming. For example, selecting Closed Loop enables additional parameters related to closed loop operation. Option cards added to the unit enable additional parameters associated with the option device.

5.1.9 Parameter Selection

In the Main Menu mode, the parameters are divided into groups. Select a parameter group by means of the navigation keys.
The following parameter groups are accessible:

Group no.	Parameter group:
0	Operation/Display
1	Load/Motor
2	Brakes
3	References/Ramps
4	Limits/Warnings
5	Digital In/Out
6	Analog In/Out
8	Comm. and Options
9	Profibus
10	CAN Fieldbus
11	LonWorks
13	Smart Logic
14	Special Functions
15	Drive Information
16	Data Readouts
18	Data Readouts 2
20	Drive Closed Loop
21	Ext. Closed Loop
22	Application Functions
23	Time-based Functions
24	Fire Mode
25	Cascade Controller
26	Analog I/O Option MCB 109

Table 5.3: Parameter groups.

After selecting a parameter group, choose a parameter by means of the navigation keys.
The middle section on the GLCP display shows the parameter number and name as well as the selected parameter value.

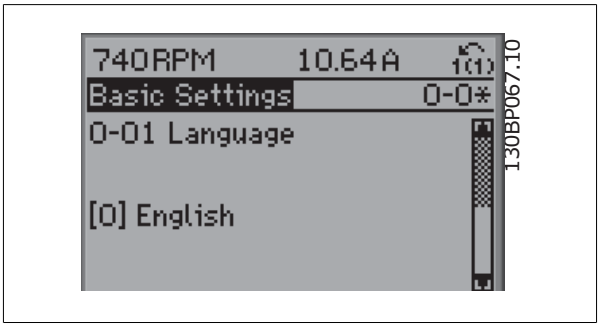


Illustration 5.10: Display example.

5.2 Commonly Used Parameters - Explanations

5.2.1 Main Menu

The Main Menu includes all available parameters in the VLT® AQUA Drive FC 200 frequency converter.
All parameters are grouped in a logic way with a group name indicating the function of the parameter group.
All parameters are listed by name and number in the section *Parameter Options* in these Operating Instructions.

All parameters included in the Quick Menus (Q1, Q2, Q3, Q5 and Q6) can be found in the following.

Some of the most used parameters for VLT® AQUA Drive applications are also explained in the following section.

For a detailed explanation of all parameters, please refer to the VLT® AQUA Drive Programming Guide MG.20.OX.YY which is available on www.danfoss.com or by ordering at the local Danfoss office.

5.2.2 0-** Operation / Display

Parameters related to the fundamental functions of the frequency converter, function of the LCPLCP buttons and configuration of the LCPLCP display.

0-01 Language

Option:		Function:
		Defines the language to be used in the display. The frequency converter can be delivered with 4 different language packages. English and German are included in all packages. English cannot be erased or manipulated.
[0] *	English	Part of Language packages 1 - 4
[1]	German	Part of Language packages 1 - 4
[2]	French	Part of Language package 1
[3]	Danish	Part of Language package 1
[4]	Spanish	Part of Language package 1
[5]	Italian	Part of Language package 1
[6]	Swedish	Part of Language package 1
[7]	Dutch	Part of Language package 1
[10]	Chinese	Language package 2
[20]	Finnish	Part of Language package 1
[22]	English US	Part of Language package 4
[27]	Greek	Part of Language package 4
[28]	Portuguese	Part of Language package 4
[36]	Slovenian	Part of Language package 3
[39]	Korean	Part of Language package 2
[40]	Japanese	Part of Language package 2
[41]	Turkish	Part of Language package 4
[42]	Traditional Chinese	Part of Language package 2
[43]	Bulgarian	Part of Language package 3
[44]	Serbian	Part of Language package 3
[45]	Romanian	Part of Language package 3
[46]	Hungarian	Part of Language package 3
[47]	Czech	Part of Language package 3
[48]	Polish	Part of Language package 4
[49]	Russian	Part of Language package 3
[50]	Thai	Part of Language package 2
[51]	Bahasa Indonesian	Part of Language package 2

0-20 Display Line 1.1 Small

Option:		Function:
		Select a variable for display in line 1, left position.
[0]	None	No display value selected
[37]	Display Text 1	Present control word
[38]	Display Text 2	Enables an individual text string to be written, for display in the LCP or to be read via serial communication.

[39]	Display Text 3	Enables an individual text string to be written, for display in the LCP or to be read via serial communication.
[89]	Date and Time Readout	Displays the current date and time.
[953]	Profibus Warning Word	Displays Profibus communication warnings.
[1005]	Readout Transmit Error Counter	View the number of CAN control transmission errors since the last power-up.
[1006]	Readout Receive Error Counter	View the number of CAN control receipt errors since the last power-up.
[1007]	Readout Bus Off Counter	View the number of Bus Off events since the last power-up.
[1013]	Warning Parameter	View a DeviceNet-specific warning word. One separate bit is assigned to every warning.
[1115]	LON Warning Word	Shows the LON-specific warnings.
[1117]	XIF Revision	Shows the version of the external interface file of the Neuron C chip on the LON option.
[1118]	LON Works Revision	Shows the software version of the application program of the Neuron C chip on the LON option.
[1500]	Operating Hours	View the number of running hours of the frequency converter.
[1501]	Running Hours	View the number of running hours of the motor.
[1502]	kWh Counter	View the mains power consumption in kWh.
[1600]	Control Word	View the Control Word sent from the frequency converter via the serial communication port in hex code.
[1601] *	Reference [Unit]	Total reference (sum of digital/analog/preset/bus/freeze ref./catch up and slow-down) in selected unit.
[1602]	Reference %	Total reference (sum of digital/analog/preset/bus/freeze ref./catch up and slow-down) in percent.
[1603]	Status Word	Present status word
[1605]	Main Actual Value [%]	One or more warnings in a Hex code
[1609]	Custom Readout	View the user-defined readouts as defined in par. 0-30, 0-31 and 0-32.
[1610]	Power [kW]	Actual power consumed by the motor in kW.
[1611]	Power [hp]	Actual power consumed by the motor in HP.
[1612]	Motor Voltage	Voltage supplied to the motor.
[1613]	Motor Frequency	Motor frequency, i.e. the output frequency from the frequency converter in Hz.
[1614]	Motor Current	Phase current of the motor measured as effective value.
[1615]	Frequency [%]	Motor frequency, i.e. the output frequency from the frequency converter in percent.
[1616]	Torque [Nm]	Present motor load as a percentage of the rated motor torque.
[1617]	Speed [RPM]	Speed in RPM (revolutions per minute) i.e. the motor shaft speed in closed loop based on the entered motor nameplate data, the output frequency and the load on the frequency converter.
[1618]	Motor Thermal	Thermal load on the motor, calculated by the ETR function. See also parameter group 1-9* Motor Temperature.
[1622]	Torque [%]	Shows the actual torque produced, in percentage.
[1630]	DC Link Voltage	Intermediate circuit voltage in the frequency converter.
[1632]	BrakeEnergy/s	Present brake power transferred to an external brake resistor. Stated as an instantaneous value.
[1633]	BrakeEnergy/2 min	Brake power transferred to an external brake resistor. The mean power is calculated continuously for the most recent 120 seconds.
[1634]	Heatsink Temp.	Present heat sink temperature of the frequency converter. The cut-out limit is 95 ±5 oC; cutting back in occurs at 70 ±5° C.
[1635]	Thermal Drive Load	Percentage load of the inverters
[1636]	Inv. Nom. Current	Nominal current of the frequency converter
[1637]	Inv. Max. Current	Maximum current of the frequency converter
[1638]	SL Control State	State of the event executed by the control
[1639]	Control Card Temp.	Temperature of the control card.
[1650]	External Reference	Sum of the external reference as a percentage, i.e. the sum of analog/pulse/bus.
[1652]	Feedback [Unit]	Signal value in units from the programmed digital input(s).

[1653]	Digi Pot Reference	View the contribution of the digital potentiometer to the actual reference Feedback.
[1654]	Feedback 1 [Unit]	View the value of Feedback 1. See also par. 20-0*.
[1655]	Feedback 2 [Unit]	View the value of Feedback 2. See also par. 20-0*.
[1656]	Feedback 3 [Unit]	View the value of Feedback 3. See also par. 20-0*.
[1660]	Digital Input	Displays the status of the 6 digital input terminals (18, 19, 27, 29, 32 and 33). Input 18 corresponds to the bit at the far left. Signal low = 0; Signal high = 1
[1661]	Terminal 53 Switch Setting	Setting of input terminal 53. Current = 0; Voltage = 1.
[1662]	Analog Input 53	Actual value at input 53 either as a reference or protection value.
[1663]	Terminal 54 Switch Setting	Setting of input terminal 54. Current = 0; Voltage = 1.
[1664]	Analog Input 54	Actual value at input 54 either as reference or protection value.
[1665]	Analog Output 42 [mA]	Actual value at output 42 in mA. Use par. 6-50 to select the variable to be represented by output 42.
[1666]	Digital Output [bin]	Binary value of all digital outputs.
[1667]	Freq. Input #29 [Hz]	Actual value of the frequency applied at terminal 29 as a pulse input.
[1668]	Freq. Input #33 [Hz]	Actual value of the frequency applied at terminal 33 as a pulse input.
[1669]	Pulse Output #27 [Hz]	Actual value of pulses applied to terminal 27 in digital output mode.
[1670]	Pulse Output #29 [Hz]	Actual value of pulses applied to terminal 29 in digital output mode.
[1671]	Relay Output [bin]	View the setting of all relays.
[1672]	Counter A	View the present value of Counter A.
[1673]	Counter B	View the present value of Counter B.
[1675]	Analog input X30/11	Actual value of the signal on input X30/11 (General Purpose I/O Card. Option)
[1676]	Analog input X30/12	Actual value of the signal on input X30/12 (General Purpose I/O Card. Optional)
[1677]	Analog output X30/8 [mA]	Actual value at output X30/8 (General Purpose I/O Card. Optional) Use Par. 6-60 to select the variable to be shown.
[1680]	Fieldbus CTW 1	Control word (CTW) received from the Bus Master.
[1682]	Fieldbus REF 1	Main reference value sent with control word via the serial communications network e.g. from the BMS, PLC or other master controller.
[1684]	Comm. Option STW	Extended fieldbus communication option status word.
[1685]	FC Port CTW 1	Control word (CTW) received from the Bus Master.
[1686]	FC Port REF 1	Status word (STW) sent to the Bus Master.
[1690]	Alarm Word	One or more alarms in a Hex code (used for serial communications)
[1691]	Alarm Word 2	One or more alarms in a Hex code (used for serial communications)
[1692]	Warning Word	One or more warnings in a Hex code (used for serial communications)
[1693]	Warning Word 2	One or more warnings in a Hex code (used for serial communications)
[1694]	Ext. Status Word	One or more status conditions in a Hex code (used for serial communications)
[1695]	Ext. Status Word 2	One or more status conditions in a Hex code (used for serial communications)
[1696]	Maintenance Word	The bits reflect the status for the programmed Preventive Maintenance Events in parameter group 23-1*
[1830]	Analog Input X42/1	Shows the value of the signal applied to terminal X42/1 on the Analog I/O card.
[1831]	Analog Input X42/3	Shows the value of the signal applied to terminal X42/3 on the Analog I/O card.
[1832]	Analog Input X42/5	Shows the value of the signal applied to terminal X42/5 on the Analog I/O card.
[1833]	Analog Out X42/7 [V]	Shows the value of the signal applied to terminal X42/7 on the Analog I/O card.
[1834]	Analog Out X42/9 [V]	Shows the value of the signal applied to terminal X42/9 on the Analog I/O card.
[1835]	Analog Out X42/11 [V]	Shows the value of the signal applied to terminal X42/11 on the Analog I/O card.
[2117]	Ext. 1 Reference [Unit]	The value of the reference for extended Closed Loop Controller 1
[2118]	Ext. 1 Feedback [Unit]	The value of the feedback signal for extended Closed Loop Controller 1
[2119]	Ext. 1 Output [%]	The value of the output from extended Closed Loop Controller 1
[2137]	Ext. 2 Reference [Unit]	The value of the reference for extended Closed Loop Controller 2

[2138]	Ext. 2 Feedback [Unit]	The value of the feedback signal for extended Closed Loop Controller 2
[2139]	Ext. 2 Output [%]	The value of the output from extended Closed Loop Controller 2
[2157]	Ext. 3 Reference [Unit]	The value of the reference for extended Closed Loop Controller 3
[2158]	Ext. 3 Feedback [Unit]	The value of the feedback signal for extended Closed Loop Controller 3
[2159]	Ext. Output [%]	The value of the output from extended Closed Loop Controller 3
[2230]	No-Flow Power	The calculated No Flow Power for the actual operating speed
[2580]	Cascade Status	Status for the operation of the Cascade Controller
[2581]	Pump Status	Status for the operation of each individual pump controlled by the Cascade Controller

NB!

Please consult the **VLT® AQUA Drive Programming Guide, MG.20.OX.YY** for detailed information.

0-21 Display Line 1.2 Small

Option:		Function:
		Select a variable for display in line 1, middle position.
[1662] *	Analog input 53	The options are the same as those listed for par. 0-20 *Display Line 1.1 Small*.

0-22 Display Line 1.3 Small

Option:		Function:
		Select a variable for display in line 1, right position.
[1614] *	Motor Current	The options are the same as those listed for par. 0-20 *Display Line 1.1 Small*.

0-23 Display Line 2 Large

Option:		Function:
		Select a variable for display in line 2. The options are the same as those listed for par. 0-20 *Display Line 1.1 Small*.
[1615] *	Frequency	

0-24 Display Line 3 Large

Option:		Function:
[1652] *	Feedback [Unit]	Select a variable for display in line 2. The options are the same as those listed for par. 0-20 *Display Line 1.1 Small*.

0-37 Display Text 1

Range:		Function:
0 N/A*	[0 - 0 N/A]	In this parameter it is possible to write an individual text string for display in the LCP or to be read via serial communication. If to be displayed permanently select Display Text 1 in par. 0-20 Display *Line 1.1 Small*, par. 0-21 Display *Line 1.2 Small*, par. 0-22 Display *Line 1.3 Small*, par. 0-23 Display *Line 2 Large* or par. 0-24 Display *Line 3 Large*. Use the ▲ or ▼ buttons on the LCP to change a character. Use the ◄ and ► buttons to move the cursor. When a character is highlighted by the cursor, it can be changed. Use the ▲ or ▼ buttons on the LCP to change a character. A character can be inserted by placing the cursor between two characters and pressing ▲ or ▼.

5

0-38 Display Text 2

Range:		Function:
0 N/A*	[0 - 0 N/A]	In this parameter it is possible to write an individual text string for display in the LCP or to be read via serial communication. If to be displayed permanently select Display Text 2 in par. 0-20 Display *Line 1.1 Small*, par. 0-21 Display *Line 1.2 Small*, par. 0-22 Display *Line 1.3 Small*, par. 0-23 Display *Line 2 Large* or par. 0-24 Display *Line 3 Large*. Use the ▲ or ▼ buttons on the LCP to change a character. Use the ◄ and ► buttons to move the cursor. When a character is highlighted by the cursor, this character can be changed. A character can be inserted by placing the cursor between two characters and pressing ▲ or ▼.

0-39 Display Text 3

Range:		Function:
0 N/A*	[0 - 0 N/A]	In this parameter it is possible to write an individual text string for display in the LCPLCP or to be read via serial communication. If to be displayed permanently select Display Text 3 in par. 0-20 Display *Line 1.1 Small*,par. 0-21 Display *Line 1.2 Small*, par. 0-22 Display *Line 1.3 Small*, par. 0-23 Display *Line 2 Large* or par. 0-24 Display *Line 3 Large*. Use the ▲ or ▼ buttons on the LCPLCP to change a character. Use the ◄ and ► buttons to move the cursor. When a character is highlighted by the cursor, this character can be changed. A character can be inserted by placing the cursor between two characters and pressing ▲ or ▼.

0-70 Set Date and Time

Range:		Function:
2000-01-01 00:00 – 2099-12-01 23:59 *	[2000-01-01 00:00]	Sets the date and time of the internal clock. The format to be used is set in par. 0-71 and 0-72.

NB!
This parameter does not display the actual time. This can be read in par. 0-89. The clock will not begin counting until a setting different from default has been made.

0-71 Date Format

Option:		Function:
[0] *	YYYY-MM-DD	Sets the date format to be used in the LCP.
[1]	DD-MM-YYYY	Sets the date format to be used in the LCP.
[2]	MM/DD/YYYY	Sets the date format to be used in the LCP.

0-72 Time Format		
Option:		**Function:**
		Sets the time format to be used in the LCPLCP.
[0] *	24 h	
[1]	12 h	

0-74 DST/Summertime		
Option:		**Function:**
		Choose how Daylight Saving Time/Summertime should be handled. For manual DST/Summertime enter the start date and end date in par. 0-76 *DST/Summertime Start* and par. 0-77 *DST/Summertime End*.
[0] *	Off	
[2]	Manual	

0-76 DST/Summertime Start		
Range:		**Function:**
0 N/A*	[0 - 0 N/A]	Sets the date and time when summertime/DST starts. The date is programmed in the format selected in par. 0-71 Date *Format*.

0-77 DST/Summertime End		
Range:		**Function:**
0 N/A*	[0 - 0 N/A]	Sets the date and time when summertime/DST ends. The date is programmed in the format selected in par. 0-71 Date *Format*.

5.2.3 General Settings, 1-0*

Define whether the frequency converter operates in open loop or closed loop.

1-00 Configuration Mode		
Option:		**Function:**
[0] *	Open Loop	Motor speed is determined by applying a speed reference or by setting desired speed when in Hand Mode. Open Loop is also used if the frequency converter is part of a closed loop control system based on an external PID controller providing a speed reference signal as output.
[3]	Closed Loop	Motor Speed will be determined by a reference from the built-in PID controller varying the motor speed as part of a closed loop control process (e.g. constant pressure or flow). The PID controller must be configured in par. 20-** or via the Function Setups accessed by pressing the [Quick Menus] button.

NB!
This parameter cannot be changed when motor is running.

NB!
When set for Closed Loop, the commands Reversing and Start Reversing will not reverse the direction of the motor.

1-20 Motor Power [kW]

Range:		Function:
4.00 kW*	[0.09 - 3000.00 kW]	Enter the nominal motor power in kW according to the motor nameplate data. The default value corresponds to the nominal rated output of the unit. This parameter cannot be adjusted while the motor is running. Depending on the choices made in par. 0-03 Regional *Settings*, either par. 1-20 *Motor Power [kW]* or par. 1-21 Motor *Power [HP]* is made invisible.

1-22 Motor Voltage

Range:		Function:
400. V*	[10. - 1000. V]	Enter the nominal motor voltage according to the motor nameplate data. The default value corresponds to the nominal rated output of the unit. This parameter cannot be adjusted while the motor is running.

1-23 Motor Frequency

Range:		Function:
50. Hz*	[20 - 1000 Hz]	Select the motor frequency value from the motor nameplate data.For 87 Hz operation with 230/400 V motors, set the nameplate data for 230 V/50 Hz. Adapt par. 4-13 *Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]* and par. 3-03 *Maximum Reference* to the 87 Hz application.

NB!
This parameter cannot be adjusted while the motor is running.

1-24 Motor Current

Range:		Function:
7.20 A*	[0.10 - 10000.00 A]	Enter the nominal motor current value from the motor nameplate data. This data is used for calculating motor torque, motor thermal protection etc.

NB!
This parameter cannot be adjusted while the motor is running.

1-25 Motor Nominal Speed

Range:		Function:
1420. RPM*	[100 - 60000 RPM]	Enter the nominal motor speed value from the motor nameplate data. This data is used for calculating automatic motor compensations.

NB!
This parameter cannot be changed while the motor is running.

1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)		
Option:		**Function:**
		The AMA function optimizes dynamic motor performance by automatically optimizing the advanced motor parameters par. 1-30 Stator *Resistance (Rs)* to par. 1-35 Main *Reactance (Xh)*) while the motor is stationary.
[0] *	Off	No function
[1]	Enable complete AMA	performs AMA of the stator resistance R_S, the rotor resistance R_r, the stator leakage reactance X_1, the rotor leakage reactance X_2 and the main reactance X_h.
[2]	Enable reduced AMA	performs a reduced AMA of the stator resistance R_s in the system only. Select this option if an LC filter is used between the frequency converter and the motor.

Activate the AMA function by pressing [Hand on] after selecting [1] or [2]. See also the section *Automatic Motor Adaptation*. After a normal sequence, the display will read: "Press [OK] to finish AMA". After pressing the [OK] key the frequency converter is ready for operation.

Note:

- For the best adaptation of the frequency converter, run AMA on a cold motor
- AMA cannot be performed while the motor is running

NB!
It is important to set motor par. 1-2* Motor Data correctly, since these form part of the AMA algorithm. An AMA must be performed to achieve optimum dynamic motor performance. It may take up to 10 min., depending on motor power rating.

NB!
Avoid generating external torque during AMA

NB!
If one of the settings in par. 1-2* Motor Data is changed, par. 1-30 Stator *Resistance (Rs)* to par. 1-39 Motor *Poles*, the advanced motor parameters, will return to default setting.
This parameter cannot be adjusted while the motor is running

NB!
Full AMA should be run without filter only while reduced AMA should be run with filter.

See section *Automatic Motor Adaptation* - application example.

5.2.4 3-0* Reference Limits

Parameters for setting the reference unit, limits and ranges.

3-02 Minimum Reference

Range:	Function:
0.000 Ref- [-999999.999 - par. 3-03 Referen- erenceFeed-ceFeedbackUnit] backUnit*	Enter the Minimum Reference. The Minimum Reference is the lowest value obtainable by summing all references. The Minimum Reference value and unit matches the configuration choice made in par. 1-00 *Configuration Mode* and par. 20-12 Reference/Feedback *Unit*, respectively.

NB!
This parameter is used in open loop only.

3-03 Maximum Reference

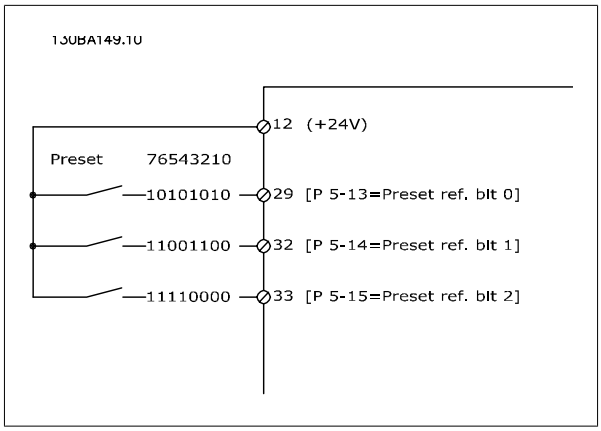
Range:	Function:
50.000 Ref- [par. 3-02 - 999999.999 Referen- erenceFeed-ceFeedbackUnit] backUnit*	Enter the Maximum Reference. The Maximum Reference is the highest value obtainable by summing all references. The Maximum Reference value and unit matches the configuration choice made in par. 1-00 *Configuration Mode* and par. 20-12 Reference/Feedback *Unit*, respectively.

NB!
This parameter is used in open loop only.

3-10 Preset Reference

Array [8]

Range:	Function:
0.00 %* [-100.00 - 100.00 %]	Enter up to eight different preset references (0-7) in this parameter, using array programming. The preset reference is stated as a percentage of the value Ref_{MAX} (par. 3-03 Maximum Reference) or as a percentage of the other external references. If a Ref_{MIN} different from 0 (Par. 3-02 Minimum Reference) is programmed, the preset reference is calculated as a percentage of the full reference range, i.e. on the basis of the difference between Ref_{MAX} and Ref_{MIN}. Afterwards, the value is added to Ref_{MIN}. When using preset references, select Preset ref. bit 0 / 1 / 2 [16], [17] or [18] for the corresponding digital inputs in parameter group 5.1* Digital Inputs.



3-41 Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time

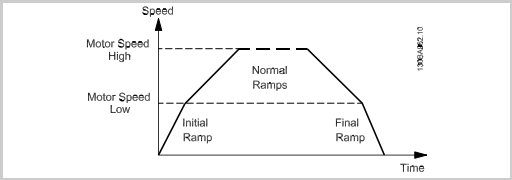
Range:		Function:
10.00 s*	[1.00 - 3600.00 s]	Enter the ramp-up time, i.e. the acceleration time from 0 RPM to par. 1-25. Choose a ramp-up time such that the output current does not exceed the current limit in par. 4-18 during ramping. See ramp-down time in par. 3-42 *Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time*. $par.3-41 = \frac{tacc \times nnorm\,[par.1-25]}{ref\,[rpm]}[s]$ See drawing above!

3-42 Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time

Range:		Function:
20.00 s*	[1.00 - 3600.00 s]	Enter the ramp-down time, i.e. the deceleration time from par. 1-25 *Motor Nominal Speed* to 0 RPM. Choose a ramp-down time such that no over-voltage arises in the inverter due to regenerative operation of the motor, and such that the generated current does not exceed the current limit set in par. 4-18 Current *Limit*. See ramp-up time in par. 3-41 *Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time*. $par.3-42 = \frac{tdec \times nnorm\,[par.1-25]}{ref\,[rpm]}[s]$

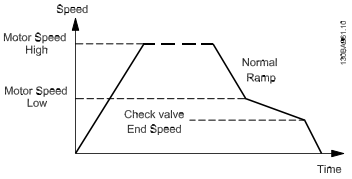
3-84 Initial Ramp Time

Range:		Function:
0 s*	[0 – 60 s]	Enter the initial ramp up time from zero speed to Motor Speed Low Limit, par. 4-11 or 4-12. Submersible deep well pumps can be damaged by running below minimum speed. A fast ramp time below minimum pump speed is recommended. This parameter may be applied as a fast ramp rate from zero speed to Motor Speed Low Limit.



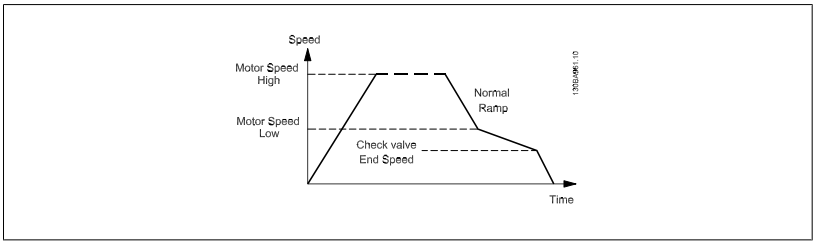
3-85 Check Valve Ramp Time

Range:		Function:
0 s*	[0 – 60 s]	In order to protect ball check valves in a stop situation, the check valve ramp can be utilized as a slow ramp rate from par. 4-11 *Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]* or par. 4-12 Motor *Speed Low Limit [Hz]*, to Check Valve Ramp End Speed, set by the user in par. 3-86 or par. 3-87. When par. 3-85 is different from 0 seconds, the Check Valve Ramp Time is effectuated and will be used to ramp down the speed from Motor Speed Low Limit to the Check Valve End Speed in par. 3-86 or par. 3-87.



3-86 Check Valve Ramp End Speed [RPM]

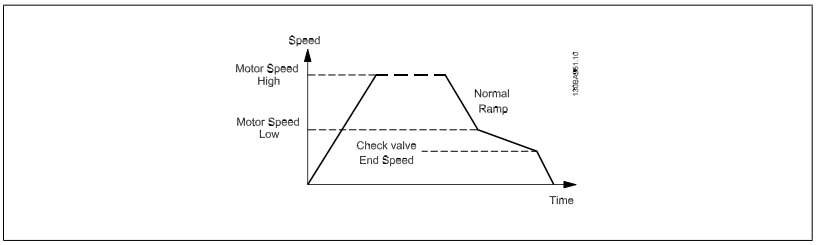
Range:		Function:
0 [RPM]*	[0 – Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]]	Set the speed in [RPM] below Motor Speed Low Limit where the Check Valve is expected to be closed and the Check Valve no longer shall be active.



5

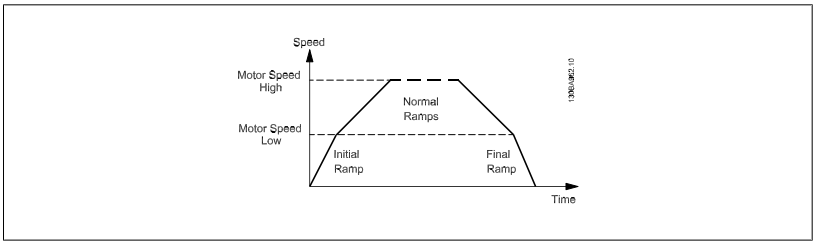
3-87 Check Valve Ramp End Speed [Hz]

Range:		Function:
0 [Hz]*	[0 – Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz]]	Set the speed in [Hz] below Motor Speed Low Limit where the Check Valve Ramp will no longer be active.



3-88 Final Ramp Time

Range:		Function:
0 [s]*	[0 – 60 [s]]	Enter the Final Ramp Time to be used when ramping down from Motor Speed Low Limit, par. 4-11 or 4-12, to zero speed. Submersible deep well pumps can be damaged by running below minimum speed. A fast ramp time below minimum pump speed is recommended. This parameter may be applied as a fast ramp rate from Motor Speed Low Limit to zero speed.



5.2.5 4-** Limits and Warnings

Parameter group for configuring limits and warnings.

4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]

Range:		Function:
0 RPM*	[0 - par. 4-13 RPM]	Enter the minimum limit for motor speed. The Motor Speed Low Limit can be set to correspond to the manufacturer's recommended minimum motor speed. The Motor Speed Low Limit must not exceed the setting in par. 4-13 *Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]*.

4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]

Range:		Function:
1500. RPM*	[par. 4-11 - 60000. RPM]	Enter the maximum limit for motor speed. The Motor Speed High Limit can be set to correspond to the manufacturer's maximum rated motor. The Motor Speed High Limit must exceed the setting in par. 4-11 *Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]*. Only par. 4-11 *Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]* or par. 4-12 Motor *Speed Low Limit [Hz]* will be displayed depending on other parameters in the Main Menu and depending on default settings dependant on global location.

NB!
The output frequency value of the frequency converternot exceed a value higher than 1/10 of the switching frequency.

NB!
Any changes in par. 4-13 *Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]* will reset the value in par. 4-53 Warning *Speed High* to the same value as set in par. 4-13 *Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]*.

5.2.6 5-** Digital In/Out

Parameter group for configuring the digital input and output.

5-01 Terminal 27 Mode		
Option:		**Function:**
[0] *	Input	Defines terminal 27 as a digital input.
[1]	Output	Defines terminal 27 as a digital output.

Please not that this parameter cannot be adjusted while the motor is running.

5

5.2.7 5-1* Digital Inputs

Parameters for configuring the input functions for the input terminals.
The digital inputs are used for selecting various functions in the frequency converter. All digital inputs can be set to the following functions:

Digital input function	Select	Terminal
No operation	[0]	All *term 32, 33
Reset	[1]	All
Coast inverse	[2]	All
Coast and reset inverse	[3]	All
DC-brake inverse	[5]	All
Stop inverse	[6]	All
External interlock	[7]	All
Start	[8]	All *term 18
Latched start	[9]	All
Reversing	[10]	All *term 19
Start reversing	[11]	All
Jog	[14]	All *term 29
Preset reference on	[15]	All
Preset ref bit 0	[16]	All
Preset ref bit 1	[17]	All
Preset ref bit 2	[18]	All
Freeze reference	[19]	All
Freeze output	[20]	All
Speed up	[21]	All
Speed down	[22]	All
Set-up select bit 0	[23]	All
Set-up select bit 1	[24]	All
Pulse input	[32]	term 29, 33
Ramp bit 0	[34]	All
Mains failure inverse	[36]	All
Run Permissive	[52]	
Hand start	[53]	
Auto start	[54]	
DigiPot Increase	[55]	All
DigiPot Decrease	[56]	All
DigiPot Clear	[57]	All
Counter A (up)	[60]	29, 33
Counter A (down)	[61]	29, 33
Reset Counter A	[62]	All
Counter B (up)	[63]	29, 33
Counter B (down)	[64]	29, 33
Reset Counter B	[65]	All
Sleep Mode	[66]	
Reset Maintenance Word	[78]	
Lead Pump Start	[120]	
Lead Pump Alternation	[121]	
Pump 1 Interlock	[130]	
Pump 2 Interlock	[131]	
Pump 3 Interlock	[132]	

All = Terminals 18, 19, 27, 29, 32, X30/2, X30/3, X30/4. X30/ are the terminals on MCB 101.

Functions dedicated to only one digital input are stated in the associated parameter.

All digital inputs can be programmed to these functions:

[0]	No operation	No reaction to signals transmitted to terminal.
[1]	Reset	Resets frequency converter after a TRIP/ALARM. Not all alarms can be reset.
[2]	Coast inverse	Leaves motor in free mode. Logic '0' => coasting stop. (Default Digital input 27): Coasting stop, inverted input (NC).
[3]	Coast and reset inverse	Reset and coasting stop Inverted input (NC). Leaves motor in free mode and resets the frequency converter. Logic '0' => coasting stop and reset.
[5]	DC-brake inverse	Inverted input for DC braking (NC). Stops motor by energizing it with a DC current for a certain time period. See par. 2-01 to par. 2-03. The function is only active when the value in par. 2-02 is different from 0. Logic '0' => DC braking.
[6]	Stop inverse	Stop Inverted function. Generates a stop function when the selected terminal goes from logical level '1' to '0'. The stop is performed according to the selected ramp time (par. 3-42, par. 3-52, par. 3-62, par. 3-72). **NB!** When the frequency converter is at the torque limit and has received a stop command, it may not stop by itself. To ensure that the frequency converter stops, configure a digital output to *Torque limit & stop* [27] and connect this digital output to a digital input that is configured as coast.
[7]	External Interlock	Same function as Coasting stop, inverse, but External Interlock generates the alarm message 'external fault' on the display when the terminal which is programmed for Coast Inverse is logic '0'. The alarm message will also be active via digital outputs and relay outputs, if programmed for External Interlock. The alarm can be reset using a digital input or the [RESET] key if the cause for the External Interlock has been removed. A delay can be programmed in par. 22-00, External Interlock Time. After applying a signal to the input, the reaction described above will be delayed with the time set in par. 22-00.
[8]	Start	Select start for a start/stop command. Logic '1' = start, logic '0' = stop. (Default Digital input 18)
[9]	Latched start	Motor starts, if a pulse is applied for min. 2 ms. Motor stops when Stop inverse is activated
[10]	Reversing	Changes direction of motor shaft rotation. Select Logic '1' to reverse. The reversing signal only changes the direction of rotation. It does not activate the start function. Select both directions in par. 4-10 *Motor Speed Direction*. (Default Digital input 19).
[11]	Start reversing	Used for start/stop and for reversing on the same wire. Signals on start are not allowed at the same time.
[14]	Jog	Used for activating jog speed. See par. 3-11. (Default Digital input 29)
[15]	Preset reference on	Used for shifting between external reference and preset reference. It is assumed that *External/preset* [1] has been selected in par. 3-04. Logic '0' = external reference active; logic '1' = one of the eight preset references is active.
[16]	Preset ref bit 0	Enables a choice between one of the eight preset references according to the table below.
[17]	Preset ref bit 1	Enables a choice between one of the eight preset references according to the table below.
[18]	Preset ref bit 2	Enables a choice between one of the eight preset references according to the table below.

Preset ref. bit	2	1	0
Preset ref. 0	0	0	0
Preset ref. 1	0	0	1
Preset ref. 2	0	1	0
Preset ref. 3	0	1	1
Preset ref. 4	1	0	0
Preset ref. 5	1	0	1
Preset ref. 6	1	1	0
Preset ref. 7	1	1	1

[19]	Freeze ref	Freezes actual reference. The frozen reference is now the point of enable/condition for Speed up and Speed down to be used. If Speed up/down is used, the speed change always follows ramp 2 (par. 3-51 and 3-52) in the range 0 - par. 3-03 *Maximum Reference*.
[20]	Freeze output	Freezes actual motor frequency (Hz). The frozen motor frequency is now the point of enable/condition for Speed up and Speed down to be used. If Speed up/down is used, the speed change always follows ramp 2 (par. 3-51 and 3-52) in the range 0 - par. 1-23 *Motor Frequency*.  **NB!** When Freeze output is active, the frequency converter cannot be stopped via a low 'start [13]' signal. Stop the frequency converter via a terminal programmed for Coasting inverse [2] or Coast and reset, inverse [3].
[21]	Speed up	For digital control of the up/down speed is desired (motor potentiometer). Activate this function by selecting either Freeze reference or Freeze output. When Speed up is activated for less than 400 msec. the resulting reference will be increased by 0.1 %. If Speed up is activated for more than 400 msec. the resulting reference will ramp according to Ramp 1in par. 3-41.
[22]	Speed down	Same as Speed up [21].
[23]	Set-up select bit 0	Selects one of the four set-ups. Set par. 0-10 *Active Set-up* to Multi Set-up.
[24]	Set-up select bit 1	Same as Set-up select bit 0 [23]. (Default Digital input 32)
[32]	Pulse input	Select Pulse input when using a pulse sequence as either reference or feedback. Scaling is done in par. group 5-5*.
[34]	Ramp bit 0	Select which ramp to use. Logic "0" will select ramp 1 while logic "1" will select ramp 2.
[36]	Mains failure inverse	Activates par. 14-10 *Mains Failure*. Mains failure inverse is active in the Logic "0" situation.
[52]	Run Permissive	The input terminal, for which the Run permissive has been programmed must be logic "1" before a start command can be accepted. Run permissive has a logic 'AND' function related to the terminal which is programmed for *START* [8], *Jog* [14] or *Freeze Output* [20], which means that in order to start running the motor, both conditions must be fulfilled. If Run Permissive is programmed on multiple terminals, Run permissive needs only be logic '1' on one of the terminals for the function to be carried out. The digital output signal for Run Request (*Start* [8], *Jog* [14] or *Freeze output* [20]) programmed in par. 5-3* Digital outputs, or par. 5-4* Relays, will not be affected by Run Permissive.
[53]	Hand start	A signal applied will put the frequency converter into Hand mode as if button *Hand On* on the LCP has been pressed and a normal stop command will be overridden. If disconnecting the signal, the motor will stop. To make any other start commands valid, another digital input must be assign to *Auto Start* and a signal applied to this. The *Hand On* and *Auto On* buttons on the LCP has no impact. The *Off* button on the LCP will override *Hand Start* and *Auto Start*. Press either the *Hand On* or *Auto On* button to make *Hand Start* and *Auto Start* active again. If no signal on neither *Hand Start* nor *Auto Start*, the motor will stop regardless of any normal Start command applied. If signal applied to both *Hand Start* and *Auto Start*, the function will be *Auto Start*. If pressing the *Off* button on the LCP the motor will stop regardless of signals on *Hand Start* and *Auto Start*.
[54]	Auto start	A signal applied will put the frequency converter into Auto mode as if the LCP button *Auto On* has been pressed. See also *Hand Start* [53]
[55]	DigiPot Increase	Uses the input as an INCREASE signal to the Digital Potentiometer function described in parameter group 3-9*
[56]	DigiPot Decrease	Uses the input as a DECREASE signal to the Digital Potentiometer function described in parameter group 3-9*
[57]	DigiPot Clear	Uses the input to CLEAR the Digital Potentiometer reference described in parameter group 3-9*
[60]	Counter A (up)	(Terminal 29 or 33 only) Input for increment counting in the SLC counter.
[61]	Counter A (down)	(Terminal 29 or 33 only) Input for decrement counting in the SLC counter.
[62]	Reset Counter A	Input for reset of counter A.
[63]	Counter B (up)	(Terminal 29 and 33 only) Input for increment counting in the SLC counter.
[64]	Counter B (down)	(Terminal 29 and 33 only) Input for decrement counting in the SLC counter.
[65]	Reset Counter B	Input for reset of counter B.

[66]	Sleep Mode	Forces frequency converter into Sleep Mode (see par. 22-4*, Sleep Mode). Reacts on the rising edge of signal applied!
[78]	Reset Preventive Maintenance Word	Resets all data in par. 16-96, Preventive Maintenance Word, to 0.

The below setting options are all related to the Cascade Controller. Wiring diagrams and settings for parameter, see group 25-** for more details.

[120]	Lead Pump Start	Starts/Stops the Lead Pump (controlled by the frequency converter). A start requires that also a System Start signal has been applied e.g. to one of the digital inputs set for *Start* [8]!
[121]	Lead Pump Alternation	Forces alternation of the lead pump in a Cascade Controller. *Lead Pump Alternation*, par. 25-50, must be set to either *At Command* [2] or *At Staging or At Command* [3]. *Alternation Event*, par. 25-51, can be set to any of the four options.
[130 - 138]	Pump1 Interlock - Pump9 Interlock	For the above 9 setting options, par. 25-10, Pump Interlock, must be set to *On* [1]. The function will also depend on the setting in par. 25-06, Fixed Lead Pump. If set to *No* [0], then Pump1 refers to the pump controlled by relay RELAY1 etc. If set to *Yes* [1], Pump1 refers to the pump controlled by the frequency converter only (without any of the build in relays involved) and Pump2 to the pump controlled by the relay RELAY1. Variable speed pump (lead) cannot be interlocked in the basic Cascade Controller. See below table:

Setting in Par. 5-1*	Setting in Par. 25-06	
	[0] No	[1] Yes
[130] Pump1 Interlock	Controlled by RELAY1 (only if not lead pump)	Frequency Converter controlled (cannot be interlocked)
[131] Pump2 Interlock	Controlled by RELAY2	Controlled by RELAY1
[132] Pump3 Interlock	Controlled by RELAY3	Controlled by RELAY2
[133] Pump4 Interlock	Controlled by RELAY4	Controlled by RELAY3
[134] Pump5 Interlock	Controlled by RELAY5	Controlled by RELAY4
[135] Pump6 Interlock	Controlled by RELAY6	Controlled by RELAY5
[136] Pump7 Interlock	Controlled by RELAY7	Controlled by RELAY6
[137] Pump8 Interlock	Controlled by RELAY8	Controlled by RELAY7
[138] Pump9 Interlock	Controlled by RELAY9	Controlled by RELAY8

5-13 Terminal 29 Digital Input

Option:		Function:
[0] *	No Operation	Same options and functions as par. 5-1* *Digital Inputs*.

5-14 Terminal 32 Digital Input

Option:		Function:
[0] *	No operation	Same options and functions as par. 5-1*, except for *Pulse input*.
[1]	Reset	
[2]	Coast inverse	
[3]	Coast and reset inv	
[5]	DC-brake inverse	
[6]	Stop inverse	
[7]	External interlock	
[8]	Start	
[9]	Latched start	
[10]	Reversing	
[11]	Start reversing	

[14]	Jog
[15]	Preset reference on
[16]	Preset ref bit 0
[17]	Preset ref bit 1
[18]	Preset ref bit 2
[19]	Freeze reference
[20]	Freeze output
[21]	Speed up
[22]	Speed down
[23]	Set-up select bit 0
[24]	Set-up select bit 1
[34]	Ramp bit 0
[36]	Mains failure inverse
[37]	Fire Mode
[52]	Run permissive
[53]	Hand start
[54]	Auto start
[55]	DigiPot increase
[56]	DigiPot decrease
[57]	DigiPot clear
[62]	Reset Counter A
[65]	Reset Counter B
[66]	Sleep Mode
[78]	Reset Maint. Word
[120]	Lead Pump Start
[121]	Lead Pump Alternation
[130]	Pump 1 Interlock
[131]	Pump 2 Interlock
[132]	Pump 3 Interlock

5-15 Terminal 33 Digital Input

Option:		Function:
[0] *	No operation	Same options and functions as par. 5-1* Digital Inputs.
[1]	Reset	
[2]	Coast inverse	
[3]	Coast and reset inv	
[5]	DC-brake inverse	
[6]	Stop inverse	
[7]	External interlock	
[8]	Start	
[9]	Latched start	
[10]	Reversing	
[11]	Start reversing	
[14]	Jog	
[15]	Preset reference on	
[16]	Preset ref bit 0	

[17]	Preset ref bit 1
[18]	Preset ref bit 2
[19]	Freeze reference
[20]	Freeze output
[21]	Speed up
[22]	Speed down
[23]	Set-up select bit 0
[24]	Set-up select bit 1
[30]	Counter input
[32]	Pulse input
[34]	Ramp bit 0
[36]	Mains failure inverse
[37]	Fire Mode
[52]	Run permissive
[53]	Hand start
[54]	Auto start
[55]	DigiPot increase
[56]	DigiPot decrease
[57]	DigiPot clear
[60]	Counter A (up)
[61]	Counter A (down)
[62]	Reset Counter A
[63]	Counter B (up)
[64]	Counter B (down)
[65]	Reset Counter B
[66]	Sleep Mode
[78]	Reset Maint. Word
[120]	Lead Pump Start
[121]	Lead Pump Alternation
[130]	Pump 1 Interlock
[131]	Pump 2 Interlock
[132]	Pump 3 Interlock

5-30 Terminal 27 Digital Output

Option:		Function:
[0] *	No operation	Same options and functions as par. 5-3*.
[1]	Control ready	
[2]	Drive ready	
[3]	Drive rdy/rem ctrl	
[4]	Standby / no warning	
[5]	Running	
[6]	Running / no warning	
[8]	Run on ref/no warn	
[9]	Alarm	
[10]	Alarm or warning	
[11]	At torque limit	

[12]	Out of current range
[13]	Below current, low
[14]	Above current, high
[15]	Out of speed range
[16]	Below speed, low
[17]	Above speed, high
[18]	Out of feedb. range
[19]	Below feedback, low
[20]	Above feedback, high
[21]	Thermal warning
[25]	Reverse
[26]	Bus OK
[27]	Torque limit & stop
[28]	Brake, no brake war
[29]	Brake ready, no fault
[30]	Brake fault (IGBT)
[35]	External Interlock
[40]	Out of ref range
[41]	Below reference, low
[42]	Above ref, high
[45]	Bus ctrl.
[46]	Bus ctrl, 1 if timeout
[47]	Bus ctrl, 0 if timeout
[55]	Pulse output
[60]	Comparator 0
[61]	Comparator 1
[62]	Comparator 2
[63]	Comparator 3
[64]	Comparator 4
[65]	Comparator 5
[70]	Logic rule 0
[71]	Logic rule 1
[72]	Logic rule 2
[73]	Logic rule 3
[74]	Logic rule 4
[75]	Logic rule 5
[80]	SL digital output A
[81]	SL digital output B
[82]	SL digital output C
[83]	SL digital output D
[84]	SL digital output E
[85]	SL digital output F
[160]	No alarm
[161]	Running reverse
[165]	Local ref active
[166]	Remote ref active
[167]	Start command act.

[168]	Hand mode
[169]	Auto mode
[180]	Clock Fault
[181]	Prev. Maintenance
[190]	No-Flow
[191]	Dry Pump
[192]	End Of Curve
[193]	Sleep Mode
[194]	Broken Belt
[195]	Bypass Valve Control
[196]	Fire Mode
[197]	Fire Mode was Act.
[198]	Drive Bypass
[200]	Full capacity
[201]	Pump 1 running
[202]	Pump 2 running
[203]	Pump 3 running

5-40 Function Relay

Array [8]	(Relay 1 [0], Relay 2 [1], Relay 7 [6], Relay 8 [7], Relay 9 [8])

Select options to define the function of the relays.
The selection of each mechanical relay is realised in an array parameter.

[0]	No Operation
[1]	Control Ready
[2]	Drive Ready
[3]	Drive Ready/Remote
[4]	Stand-by/No Warning
[5] *	Running
[6]	Running/No Warning
[8]	Run on Ref./No Warning
[9]	Alarm
[10]	Alarm or Warning
[11]	At Torque Limit
[12]	Out of Current Range
[13]	Below Current, low
[14]	Above Current, high
[15]	Out of Speed Range
[16]	Below Speed, low
[17]	Above Speed, high
[18]	Out of Feedb. Range
[19]	Below Feedback, low
[20]	Above Feedback, high
[21]	Thermal Warning
[25]	Reverse

[26]	Bus OK
[27]	Torque Limit & Stop
[28]	Brake, No Warning
[29]	Brake Ready, No Fault
[30]	Brake Fault (IGBT)
[35]	External Interlock
[36]	Control Word Bit 11
[37]	Control Word Bit 12
[40]	Out of Ref. Range
[41]	Below Reference, low
[42]	Above Ref. high
[45]	Bus ctrl
[46]	Bus ctrl, 1 if timeout
[47]	Bus ctrl, 0 if timeout
[60]	Comparator 0
[61]	Comparator 1
[62]	Comparator 2
[63]	Comparator 3
[64]	Comparator 4
[65]	Comparator 5
[70]	Logic Rule 0
[71]	Logic Rule 1
[72]	Logic Rule 2
[73]	Logic Rule 3
[74]	Logic Rule 4
[75]	Logic Rule 5
[80]	SL Digital Output A
[81]	SL Digital Output B
[82]	SL Digital Output C
[83]	SL Digital Output D
[84]	SL Digital Output E
[85]	SL Digital Output F
[160]	No Alarm
[161]	Running Reverse
[165]	Local Ref. Active
[166]	Remote Ref. Active
[167]	Start Cmd. Active
[168]	Drive in Hand Mode
[169]	Drive in Auto Mode
[180]	Clock Fault
[181]	Prev. Maintenance
[190]	No-Flow
[191]	Dry Pump
[192]	End of Curve
[193]	Sleep Mode
[194]	Broken Belt
[195]	Bypass Valve Control

[199]	Pipe Filling
[211]	Cascade Pump1
[212]	Cascade Pump2
[213]	Cascade Pump3
[223]	Alarm, Trip Locked
[224]	Bypass Mode Active

5-53 Term. 29 High Ref./Feedb. Value

Range:		Function:
100.000 N/A*	[-999999.999 - 999999.999 N/A]	Enter the high reference value [RPM] for the motor shaft speed and the high feedback value, see also par. 5-58 Term. *33 High Ref./Feedb. Value*.

5.2.8 6-** Analog In/Out

Parameter group for configuration of the analog input and output.

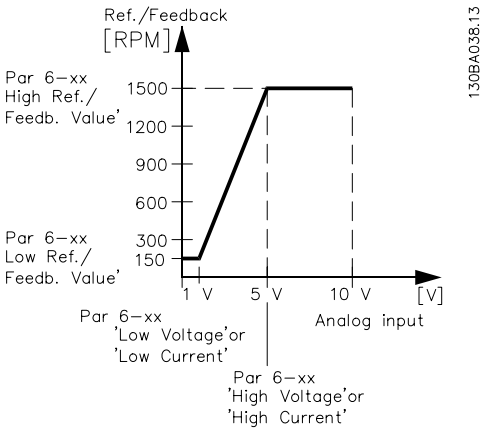
6-00 Live Zero Timeout Time

Range:		Function:
10 s*	[1 - 99 s]	Enter the Live Zero Time-out time period. Live Zero Time-out Time is active for analog inputs, i.e. terminal 53 or terminal 54, allocated to current and used as reference or feedback sources. If the reference signal value associated with the selected current input falls below 50% of the value set in par. 6-10 *Terminal 53 Low Voltage*, par. 6-12 Terminal *53 Low Current*, par. 6-20 *Terminal 54 Low Voltage* or par. 6-22 Terminal *54 Low Current* for a time period longer than the time set in par. 6-00 *Live Zero Timeout Time*, the function selected in par. 6-01 *Live Zero Timeout Function* will be activated.

5

6-01 Live Zero Timeout Function

Option:		Function:
		Select the time-out function. The function set in par. 6-01 *Live Zero Timeout Function* will be activated if the input signal on terminal 53 or 54 is below 50% of the value in par. 6-10 *Terminal 53 Low Voltage*, par. 6-12 Terminal *53 Low Current*, par. 6-20 *Terminal 54 Low Voltage* or par. 6-22 Terminal *54 Low Current* for a time period defined in par. 6-00 *Live Zero Timeout Time*. If several time-outs occur simultaneously, the frequency converter prioritises the time-out functions as follows: 1. par. 6-01 *Live Zero Timeout Function* 2. par. 8-04 Control *Timeout Function* The output frequency of the frequency converter can be: • [1] frozen at the present value • [2] overruled to stop • [3] overruled to jog speed • [4] overruled to max. speed • [5] overruled to stop with subsequent trip If you select set-up 1-4, par. 0-10 Active *Set-up* must be set to *Multi Set-up*, [9]. This parameter cannot be adjusted while the motor is running.
[0] *	Off	
[1]	Freeze output	
[2]	Stop	
[3]	Jogging	
[4]	Max. speed	
[5]	Stop and trip	



6-10 Terminal 53 Low Voltage

Range:		Function:
0.07 V*	[0.00 - par. 6-11 V]	Enter the low voltage value. This analog input scaling value should correspond to the low reference/feedback value set in par. 6-14 *Terminal 53 Low Ref./Feedb. Value*.

6-11 Terminal 53 High Voltage

Range:		Function:
10.00 V*	[par. 6-10 - 10.00 V]	Enter the high voltage value. This analog input scaling value should correspond to the high reference/feedback value set in par. 6-15 *Terminal 53 High Ref./Feedb. Value*.

6-14 Terminal 53 Low Ref./Feedb. Value

Range:		Function:
0.000 N/A*	[-999999.999 - 999999.999 N/A]	Enter the analog input scaling value that corresponds to the low voltage/low current set in par. 6-10 *Terminal 53 Low Voltage* and par. 6-12 Terminal *53 Low Current*.

6-15 Terminal 53 High Ref./Feedb. Value

Range:		Function:
50.000 N/A*	[-999999.999 - 999999.999 N/A]	Enter the analog input scaling value that corresponds to the high voltage/high current value set in par. 6-11 *Terminal 53 High Voltage* and par. 6-13 Terminal *53 High Current*.

6-20 Terminal 54 Low Voltage

Range:		Function:
0.07 V*	[0.00 - par. 6-21 V]	Enter the low voltage value. This analog input scaling value should correspond to the low reference/feedback value, set in par. 6-24 *Terminal 54 Low Ref./Feedb. Value*.

6-21 Terminal 54 High Voltage

Range:		Function:
10.00 V*	[par. 6-20 - 10.00 V]	Enter the high voltage value. This analog input scaling value should correspond to the high reference/feedback value set in par. 6-25 *Terminal 54 High Ref./Feedb. Value*.

6-24 Terminal 54 Low Ref./Feedb. Value

Range:		Function:
0.000 N/A*	[-999999.999 - 999999.999 N/A]	Enter the analog input scaling value that corresponds to the low voltage/low current value set in par. 6-20 *Terminal 54 Low Voltage* and par. 6-22 Terminal *54 Low Current*.

6-25 Terminal 54 High Ref./Feedb. Value

Range:		Function:
100.000 N/A*	[-999999.999 - 999999.999 N/A]	Enter the analog input scaling value that corresponds to the high voltage/high current value set in par. 6-21 *Terminal 54 High Voltage* and par. 6-23 Terminal *54 High Current*.

6-50 Terminal 42 Output

Option:		Function:
		Select the function of Terminal 42 as an analog current output.
[0] *	No operation	
[100]	Output freq. 0-100	: 0 - 100 Hz
[101]	Reference Min-Max	: Minimum reference - Maximum reference
[102]	Feedback +-200%	: -200% to +200% of par. 2-14
[103]	Motor cur. 0-Imax	: 0 - Inverter Max. Current (par. 16-37)
[104]	Torque 0-Tlim	: 0 - Torque limit (par. 4-16)
[105]	Torque 0-Tnom	: 0 - Motor rated torque
[106]	Power 0-Pnom	: 0 - Motor rated power
[107]	Speed 0-HighLim	: 0 - Speed High Limit (par. 4-13 and par. 4-14)
[113]	Ext. Closed Loop 1	0 - 100%
[114]	Ext. Closed Loop 2	0 - 100%
[115]	Ext. Closed Loop 3	0 - 100%
[130]	Out frq 0-100 4-20mA	:0 - 100 Hz
[131]	Reference 4-20mA	Minimum Reference - Maximum Reference
[132]	Feedback 4-20mA	-200% to +200% of par. 2-14
[133]	Motor cur. 4-20mA	0 - Inverter Max. Current (par. 16-37 Inv. *Max. Current*)
[134]	Torq.0-lim 4-20 mA	:0 - Torque limit (par. 4-16)
[135]	Torq.0-nom 4-20mA	:0 - Motor rated torque
[136]	Power 4-20mA	0 - Motor rated power
[137]	Speed 4-20mA	0 - Speed High Limit (par. 4-13 and par. 4-14)
[139]	Bus ctrl.	0 - 100%
[140]	Bus ctrl. 4-20 mA	0 - 100%
[141]	Bus ctrl t.o.	0 - 100%
[142]	Bus ctrl t.o. 4-20mA	0 - 100%
[143]	Ext. CL 1 4-20mA	0 - 100%
[144]	Ext. CL 2 4-20mA	0 - 100%
[145]	Ext. CL 3 4-20mA	0 - 100%

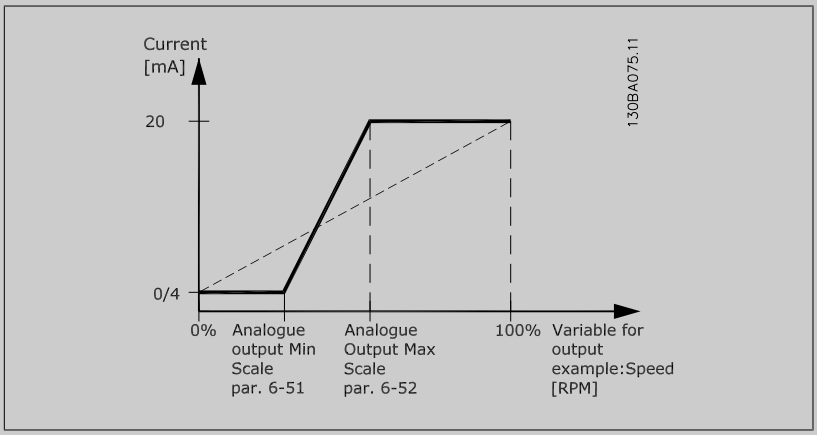
NB!
Values for setting the Minimum Reference is found in par. 3-02 *Minimum Reference* and par. 20-13 Minimum *Reference/Feedb.* - values for Maximum Reference is found in par. 3-03 *Maximum Reference* and par. 20-14 Maximum *Reference/Feedb.*.

6-51 Terminal 42 Output Min Scale

Range:		Function:
0.00 %*	[0.00 - 200.00 %]	Scale for the minimum output (0 or 4 mA) of the analogue signal at terminal 42. Set the value to be the **percentage** of the full range of the variable selected in par. 6-50 *Terminal 42 Output*.

6-52 Terminal 42 Output Max Scale

Range:	Function:
100.00 %* [0.00 - 200.00 %]	Scale for the maximum output (20 mA) of the analog signal at terminal 42. Set the value to be the percentage of the full range of the variable selected in par. 6-50 *Terminal 42 Output*.



It is possible to get a value lower than 20 mA at full scale by programming values >100% by using a formula as follows:

$$20\ mA / desired\ maximum\ current \times 100\ \%$$

$$i.e.\ 10 mA: \frac{20\ mA}{10\ mA} \times 100\ \% = 200\ \%$$

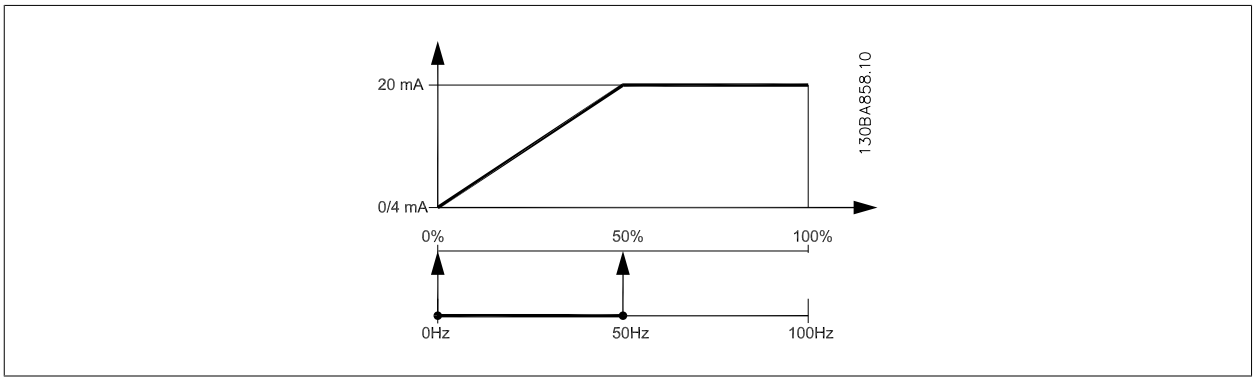
EXAMPLE 1:

Variable value= OUTPUT FREQUENCY, range = 0-100 Hz

Range needed for output = 0-50 Hz

Output signal 0 or 4 mA is needed at 0 Hz (0% of range) - set par. 6-51 *Terminal 42 Output Min Scale* to 0%

Output signal 20 mA is needed at 50 Hz (50% of range) - set par. 6-52 *Terminal 42 Output Max Scale* to 50%



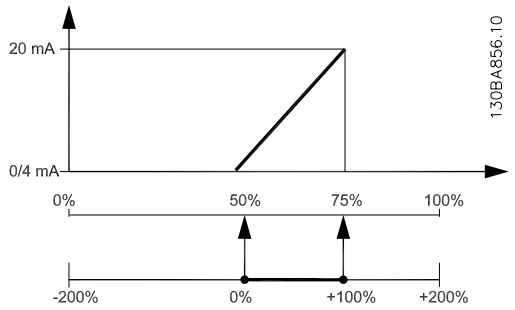
EXAMPLE 2:

Variable= FEEDBACK, range= -200% to +200%

Range needed for output= 0-100%

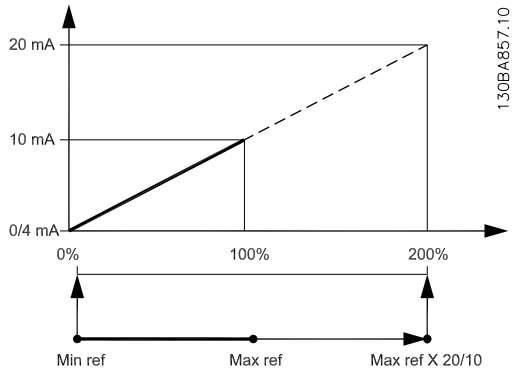
Output signal 0 or 4 mA is needed at 0% (50% of range) - set par. 6-51 *Terminal 42 Output Min Scale* to 50%

Output signal 20 mA is needed at 100% (75% of range) - set par. 6-52 *Terminal 42 Output Max Scale* to 75%



5

EXAMPLE 3:
Variable value= REFERENCE, range= Min ref - Max ref
Range needed for output= Min ref (0%) - Max ref (100%), 0-10 mA
Output signal 0 or 4 mA is needed at Min ref - set par. 6-51 *Terminal 42 Output Min Scale* to 0%
Output signal 10 mA is needed at Max ref (100% of range) - set par. 6-52 *Terminal 42 Output Max Scale* to 200%
(20 mA / 10 mA x 100%=200%).



5.2.9 Drive Closed Loop, 20-**

This parameter group is used for configuring the closed loop PID Controller, that controls the output frequency of the frequency converter.

20-12 Reference/Feedback Unit	
Option:	**Function:**
[0]	None
[1] *	%
[5]	PPM
[10]	1/min
[11]	RPM
[12]	Pulse/s
[20]	l/s
[21]	l/min
[22]	l/h
[23]	m^3/s

[24]	m^3/min	
[25]	m^3/h	
[30]	kg/s	
[31]	kg/min	
[32]	kg/h	
[33]	t/min	
[34]	t/h	
[40]	m/s	
[41]	m/min	
[45]	m	
[60]	°C	
[70]	mbar	
[71]	bar	
[72]	Pa	
[73]	kPa	
[74]	m WG	
[75]	mm Hg	
[80]	kW	
[120]	GPM	
[121]	gal/s	
[122]	gal/min	
[123]	gal/h	
[124]	CFM	
[125]	ft^3/s	
[126]	ft^3/min	
[127]	ft^3/h	
[130]	lb/s	
[131]	lb/min	
[132]	lb/h	
[140]	ft/s	
[141]	ft/min	
[145]	ft	
[160]	°F	
[170]	psi	
[171]	lb/in^2	
[172]	in WG	
[173]	ft WG	
[174]	in Hg	
[180]	HP	This parameter determines the unit that is used for the setpoint reference and feedback that the PID Controller will use for controlling the output frequency of the frequency converter.

5

20-21 Setpoint 1

Range:		Function:
0.000 ProcessCtrlUnit*	[-999999.999 - 999999.999 ProcessCtrlUnit]	Setpoint 1 is used in Closed Loop Mode to enter a setpoint reference that is used by the frequency converter's PID Controller. See the description of par. 20-20 Feedback *Function*.

NB!
Setpoint reference entered here is added to any other references that are enabled (see par. group 3-1*).

20-81 PID Normal/Inverse Control

Option:		Function:
[0] *	Normal	
[1]	Inverse	*Normal* [0] causes the frequency converter's output frequency to decrease when the feedback is greater than the setpoint reference. This is common for pressure-controlled supply fan and pump applications. *Inverse* [1] causes the frequency converter's output frequency to increase when the feedback is greater than the setpoint reference.

20-82 PID Start Speed [RPM]

Range:		Function:
0 RPM*	[0 - par. 4-13 RPM]	When the frequency converter is first started, it initially ramps up to this output speed in Open Loop Mode, following the active Ramp Up Time. When the output speed programmed here is reached, the frequency converter will automatically switch to Closed Loop Mode and the PID Controller will begin to function. This is useful in applications in which the driven load must first quickly accelerate to a minimum speed when it is started.

NB!
This parameter will only be visible if par. 0-02 Motor *Speed Unit* is set to [0], RPM.

20-93 PID Proportional Gain

Range:		Function:
0.50 N/A*	[0.00 - 10.00 N/A]	When the difference between the feedback and the setpoint reference is less than the value of this parameter, the frequency converter's display will show "Run on Reference". This status can be communicated externally by programming the function of a digital output for *Run on Reference/No Warning* [8]. In addition, for serial communications, the On Reference status bit of the frequency converter's Status Word will be high (1). The *On Reference Bandwidth* is calculated as a percentage of the setpoint reference.

20-94 PID Integral Time

Range:		Function:
20.00 s*	[0.01 - 10000.00 s]	The integrator adds over time (integrates) the error between the feedback and the setpoint reference. This is required to ensure that the error approaches zero. Quick frequency converter speed adjustment is obtained when this value is small. However, if too small of a value is used, the frequency converter's output frequency may become unstable.

5.2.10 22-** Miscellaneous

This group contains parameters used for monitoring water/ wastewater applications.

22-20 Low Power Auto Set-up

Option:		Function:
		When set for *Enabled*, an auto set up sequence is activated, automatically setting speed to approx. 50 and 85% of rated motor speed (par. 4-13 *Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]*, par. 4-14 Motor *Speed High Limit [Hz]*). At those two speeds, the power consumption is automatically measured and stored. Before enabling Auto Set Up: 1. Close valve(s) in order to create a no flow condition 2. The frequency converter must be set for Open Loop (par. 1-00 *Configuration Mode*). Note that it is important also to set par. 1-03 Torque *Characteristics*.
[0] *	Off	
[1]	Enabled	

NB!
Auto Set Up must be done when the system has reached normal operating temperature!

NB!
It is important that the par. 4-13 *Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]* or par. 4-14 Motor *Speed High Limit [Hz]* is set to the max. operational speed of the motor!
It is important to do the Auto Set-up before configuring the integrated PI Contoller as settings will be reset when changing from Closed to Open Loop in par. 1-00 *Configuration Mode*.

NB!
Carry out the tuning with the same settings in par. 1-03 Torque *Characteristics*, as for operation after the tuning.

22-21 Low Power Detection

Option:		Function:
[0] *	Disabled	
[1]	Enabled	If selecting Enabled, the Low Power Detection commissioning must be carried out in order to set the parameters in group 22-3* for proper operation!

22-22 Low Speed Detection

Option:		Function:
[0] *	Disabled	
[1]	Enabled	Select Enabled for detecting when the motor operates with a speed as set in par. 4-11 *Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]* or par. 4-12 Motor *Speed Low Limit [Hz]*.

5

22-23 No-Flow Function

Option:		Function:
		Common actions for Low Power Detection and Low Speed Detection (Individual selections not possible).
[0] *	Off	
[1]	Sleep Mode	
[2]	Warning	Messages in the Local Control Panel display (if mounted) and/or signal via a relay or a digital output.
[3]	Alarm	The frequency converter trips and motor stays stopped until reset.

22-24 No-Flow Delay

Range:		Function:
10 s*	[1 - 600 s]	Set the time Low Power/Low Speed must stay detected to activate signal for actions. If detection disappears before run out of the timer, the timer will be reset.

22-26 Dry Pump Function

Option:		Function:
		Low Power Detection must be Enabled (par. 22-21 *Low Power Detection*) and commissioned (using either par. 22-3*, *No Flow Power Tuning*, or par. 22-20 *Low Power Auto Set-up*) in order to use Dry Pump Detection.
[0] *	Off	
[1]	Warning	Messages in the Local Control Panel display (if mounted) and/or signal via a relay or a digital output.
[2]	Alarm	The frequency converter trips and motor stays stopped until reset.

22-27 Dry Pump Delay

Range:		Function:
10 s*	[0 - 600 s]	Defines for how long the Dry Pump condition must be active before activating Warning or Alarm

22-30 No-Flow Power

Range:		Function:
0.00 kW*	[0.00 - 0.00 kW]	Read out of calculated No Flow power at actual speed. If power drops to the display value the frequency converter will consider the condition as a No Flow situation.

22-31 Power Correction Factor

Range:		Function:
100 %*	[1 - 400 %]	Make corrections to the calculated power at par. 22-30 *No-Flow Power*. If No Flow is detected, when it should not be detected, the setting should be decreased. However, if No Flow is not detected, when it should be detected, the setting should be increased to above 100%.

22-32 Low Speed [RPM]

Range:		Function:
0 RPM*	[0 - par. 22-36 RPM]	To be used if par. 0-02 Motor *Speed Unit* has been set for RPM (parameter not visible if Hz selected). Set used speed for the 50% level. This function is used for storing values needed to tune No Flow Detection.

22-33 Low Speed [Hz]

Range:		Function:
0 Hz*	[0.0 - par. 22-37 Hz]	To be used if par. 0-02 Motor *Speed Unit* has been set for Hz (parameter not visible if RPM selected). Set used speed for the 50% level. The function is used for storing values needed to tune No Flow Detection.

22-34 Low Speed Power [kW]

Range:		Function:
0 kW*	[0.00 - 0.00 kW]	To be used if par. 0-03 Regional *Settings* has been set for International (parameter not visible if North America selected). Set power consumption at 50% speed level. This function is used for storing values needed to tune No Flow Detection.

22-35 Low Speed Power [HP]

Range:		Function:
0 hp*	[0.00 - 0.00 hp]	To be used if par. 0-03 Regional *Settings* has been set for North America (parameter not visible if International selected). Set power consumption at 50% speed level. This function is used for storing values needed to tune No Flow Detection.

22-36 High Speed [RPM]

Range:		Function:
0 RPM*	[0 - par. 4-13 RPM]	To be used if par. 0-02 Motor *Speed Unit* has been set for RPM (parameter not visible if Hz selected). Set used speed for the 85% level. The function is used for storing values needed to tune No Flow Detection.

22-37 High Speed [Hz]

Range:		Function:
0.0 Hz*	[0.0 - par. 4-14 Hz]	To be used if par. 0-02 Motor *Speed Unit* has been set for Hz (parameter not visible if RPM selected). Set used speed for the 85% level. The function is used for storing values needed to tune No Flow Detection.

22-38 High Speed Power [kW]

Range:		Function:
0 kW*	[0.00 - 0.00 kW]	To be used if par. 0-03 Regional *Settings* has been set for International (parameter not visible if North America selected). Set power consumption at 85% speed level. This function is used for storing values needed to tune No Flow Detection.

22-39 High Speed Power [HP]

Range:		Function:
0 hp*	[0.00 - 0.00 hp]	To be used if par. 0-03 Regional *Settings* has been set for North America (parameter not visible if International selected). Set power consumption at 85% speed level. This function is used for storing values needed to tune No Flow Detection.

22-40 Minimum Run Time

Range:		Function:
10 s*	[0 - 600 s]	Set the desired minimum running time for the motor after a start command (digital input or Bus) before entering Sleep Mode.

22-41 Minimum Sleep Time

Range:		Function:
10 s*	[0 - 600 s]	Set the desired Minimum Time for staying in Sleep Mode. This will override any wake up conditions.

22-42 Wake-up Speed [RPM]

Range:		Function:
0 RPM*	[par. 4-11 - par. 4-13 RPM]	To be used if par. 0-02 Motor *Speed Unit* has been set for RPM (parameter not visible if Hz selected). Only to be used if par. 1-00 *Configuration Mode* is set for Open Loop and speed reference is applied by an external controller. Set the reference speed at which the Sleep Mode should be cancelled.

22-43 Wake-up Speed [Hz]

Range:		Function:
0 Hz*	[par. 4-12 - par. 4-14 Hz]	To be used if par. 0-02 Motor *Speed Unit*, has been set for Hz (parameter not visible if RPM selected). Only to be used if par. 1-00 *Configuration Mode*, is set for Open Loop and speed reference is applied by an external controller controlling the pressure. Set the reference speed at which the Sleep Mode should be cancelled.

22-44 Wake-up Ref./FB Difference

Range:		Function:
10%*	[0-100%]	Only to be used if par. 1-00, *Configuration Mode*, is set for Closed Loop and the integrated PI controller is used for controlling the pressure. Set the pressure drop allowed in percentage of set point for the pressure (Pset) before cancelling the Sleep Mode.

NB!
If used in application where the integrated PI controller is set for inverse control in par. 20-71, *PID, Normal/Inverse Control*, the value set in par. 22-44 will automatically be added.

22-45 Setpoint Boost

Range:		Function:
0 %*	[-100 - 100 %]	Only to be used if par. 1-00 *Configuration Mode*, is set for Closed Loop and the integrated PI controller is used. In systems with e.g. constant pressure control, it is advantageous to increase the system pressure before the motor is stopped. This will extend the time in which the motor is stopped and help to avoid frequent start/stop. Set the desired over pressure/temperature in percentage of set point for the pressure (Pset)/temperature before entering the Sleep Mode. If setting for 5%, the boost pressure will be Pset*1.05. The negative values can be used for e.g. cooling tower control where a negative change is needed.

22-46 Maximum Boost Time

Range:		Function:
60 s*	[0 - 600 s]	Only to be used if par. 1-00 *Configuration Mode* is set for Closed Loop and the integrated PI controller is used for controlling the pressure. Set the maximum time for which boost mode will be allowed. If the set time is exceeded, Sleep Mode will be entered, not waiting for the set boost pressure to be reached.

22-50 End of Curve Function

Option:		Function:
[0] *	Off	End of Curve monitoring not active.
[1]	Warning	A warning is issued in the display [W94].
[2]	Alarm	An alarm is issued and the frequency converter trips. A message [A94] appears in the display.

NB!
Automatic restart will reset the alarm and start the system again.

22-51 End of Curve Delay

Range:		Function:
10 s*	[0 - 600 s]	When an End of Curve condition is detected, a timer is activated. When the time set in this parameter expires, and the End of Curve condition has been steady in the entire period, the function set in par. 22-50 *End of Curve Function* will be activated. If the condition disappears before the timer expires, the timer will be reset.

22-80 Flow Compensation

Option:		Function:
[0] *	Disabled	[0] *Disabled*: Set-Point compensation not active.
[1]	Enabled	[1] *Enabled*: Set-Point compensation is active. Enabling this parameter allows the Flow Compensated Setpoint operation.

22-81 Square-linear Curve Approximation

Range:		Function:
100 %*	[0 - 100 %]	**Example 1:**

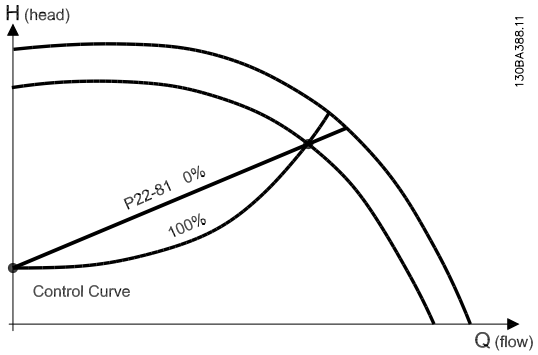
Adjustment of this parameter allows the shape of the control curve to be adjusted.

0 = Linear

100% = Ideal shape (theoretical).

NB!

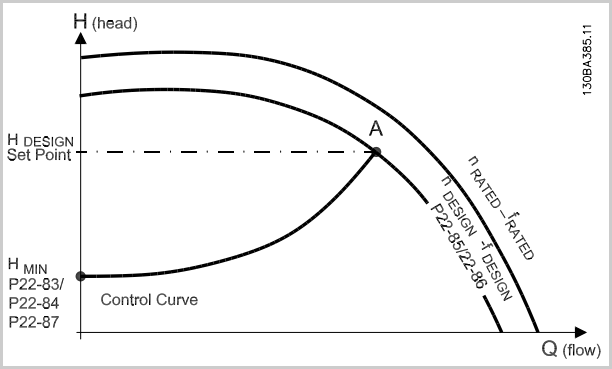
Please note: Not visible when running in cascade.



22-82 Work Point Calculation

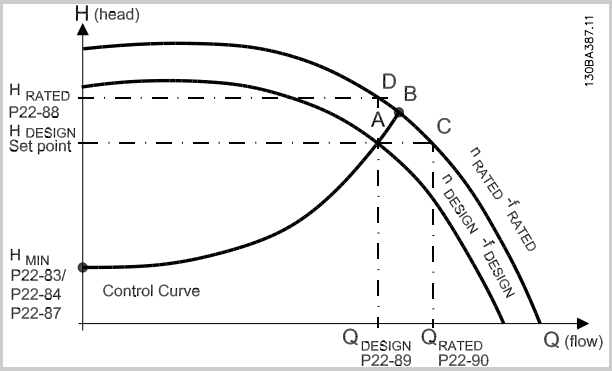
Option:		Function:

Example 1: Speed at System Design Working Point is known:



From the data sheet showing characteristics for the specific equipment at different speeds, simply reading across from the H_{DESIGN} point and the Q_{DESIGN} point allows us to find point A, which is the System Design Working Point. The pump characteristics at this point should be identified and the associated speed programmed. Closing the valves and adjusting the speed until H_{MIN} has been achieved allows the speed at the no flow point to be identified.
Adjustment of par. 22-81 *Square-linear Curve Approximation* then allows the shape of the control curve to be adjusted infinitely.

Example 2:
Speed at System Design Working Point is not known: Where the Speed at System Design Working Point is unknown, another reference point on the control curve needs to be determined by means of the data sheet. By looking at the curve for the rated speed and plotting the design pressure (H_{DESIGN}, Point C) the flow at that pressure Q_{RATED} can be determined. Similarly, by plotting the design flow (Q_{DESIGN}, Point D). the pressure H_D at that flow can be determined. Knowing these two points on the pump curve, along with H_{MIN} as described above, allows the frequency converter to calculate the reference point B and thus to plot the control curve which will also include the System design Working Point A.



[0] *	Disabled	*Disabled [0]*: Work Point Calculation not active. To be used if speed at design point is known (see table above).
[1]	Enabled	*Enabled [1]*: Work Point Calculation is active. Enabling this parameter allows the calculation of the unknown System Design Working Point at 50/60 Hz speed, from the input data set in par. 22-83 *Speed at No-Flow [RPM]* par. 22-84 *Speed at No-Flow [Hz]*, par. 22-87 *Pressure at No-Flow Speed*, par. 22-88 *Pressure at Rated Speed*, par. 22-89 Flow *at Design Point* and par. 22-90 *Flow at Rated Speed*.

22-84 Speed at No-Flow [Hz]

Range:		Function:
50.0 Hz*	[0.0 - par. 22-86 Hz]	Resolution 0.033 Hz. The speed of the motor at which flow has effectively stopped and minimum pressure H_{MIN} is achieved should be entered here in Hz. Alternatively, the speed in RPM can be entered in par. 22-83 *Speed at No-Flow [RPM]*. If it has been decided to use Hz in par. 0-02 Motor *Speed Unit* then par. 22-86 *Speed at Design Point [Hz]* should also be used. Closing the valves and reducing the speed until minimum pressure H_{MIN} is achieved will determine this value.

5

22-85 Speed at Design Point [RPM]

Range:		Function:
1500. RPM*	[par. 22-83 - 60000. RPM]	Resolution 1 RPM. Only visible when par. 22-82 *Work Point Calculation* is set to *Disable*. The speed of the motor at which the System Design Working Point is achieved should be entered here in RPM. Alternatively, the speed in Hz can be entered in par. 22-86 *Speed at Design Point [Hz]*. If it has been decided to use RPM in par. 0-02 Motor *Speed Unit* then par. 22-83 *Speed at No-Flow [RPM]* should also be used.

22-86 Speed at Design Point [Hz]

Range:		Function:
50/60.0 Hz*	[par. 22-84 - par. 4-19 Hz]	Resolution 0.033 Hz. Only visible when par. 22-82 *Work Point Calculation* is set to *Disable*. The speed of the motor at which the System Design Working Point is achieved should be entered here in Hz. Alternatively, the speed in RPM can be entered in par. 22-85 *Speed at Design Point [RPM]*. If it has been decided to use Hz in par. 0-02 Motor *Speed Unit*, then par. 22-83 *Speed at No-Flow [RPM]* should also be used.

22-87 Pressure at No-Flow Speed

Range:		Function:
0.000 N/A*	[0.000 - par. 22-88 N/A]	Enter the pressure H_{MIN} corresponding to Speed at No Flow in Reference/Feedback Units.

22-88 Pressure at Rated Speed

Range:		Function:
999999.999 N/A*	[par. 22-87 - 999999.999 N/A]	Enter the value corresponding to the Pressure at Rated Speed, in Reference/Feedback Units. This value can be defined using the pump datasheet.

22-83 Speed at No-Flow [RPM]

Range:		Function:
300. RPM*	[0 - par. 22-85 RPM]	Resolution 1 RPM. The speed of the motor at which flow Is zero and minimum pressure H_{MIN} is achieved should be entered here in RPM. Alternatively, the speed in Hz can be entered in par. 22-84 *Speed at No-Flow [Hz]*. If it has been decided to use RPM in par. 0-02 Motor *Speed Unit* then par. 22-85 *Speed at Design Point [RPM]* should also be used. Closing the valves and reducing the speed until minimum pressure H_{MIN} is achieved will determine this value.

22-90 Flow at Rated Speed	
Range:	**Function:**
0.000 N/A* [0.000 - 999999.999 N/A]	Enter the value corresponding to Flow at Rated Speed. This value can be defined using the pump datasheet.

5.2.11 Timed Actions, 23-0*

Use *Timed Actions* for actions needing to be performed on a daily or weekly basis, e.g. different references for working hours / non-working hours. Up to 10 Timed Actions can be programmed in the frequency converter. The Timed Action number is selected from the list when entering parameter group 23-0* from the Local Control Panel. par. 23-00 *ON Time* – par. 23-04 *Occurrence* then refer to the selected Timed Action number. Each Timed Action is divided into an ON time and an OFF time, in which two different actions may be performed.

NB!
The clock (parameter group 0-7*) must be correctly programmed for Timed Actions to function correctly.

NB!
When mounting an Analog I/O MCB109 option card, a battery back up of the date and time is included.

23-00 ON Time	
Array [10]	
Range:	**Function:**
0 N/A* [0 - 0 N/A]	Sets the ON time for the Timed Action.

NB!
The frequency converter has no back up of the clock function and the set date/ time will reset to default (2000-01-01 00:00) after a power down unless a Real Time Clock module with back up is installed. In par. 0-79 Clock *Fault* it is possible to program for a Warning in case clock has not been set properly, e.g. after a power down.

23-01 ON Action	
Arra [10]	
Option:	**Function:**
	Select the action during ON Time. See par. 13-52 SL *Controller Action* for descriptions of the options.
[0] * Disabled	
[1] No action	
[2] Select set-up 1	
[3] Select set-up 2	
[4] Select set-up 3	
[5] Select set-up 4	
[10] Select preset ref 0	
[11] Select preset ref 1	
[12] Select preset ref 2	

[13]	Select preset ref 3
[14]	Select preset ref 4
[15]	Select preset ref 5
[16]	Select preset ref 6
[17]	Select preset ref 7
[18]	Select ramp 1
[19]	Select ramp 2
[22]	Run
[23]	Run reverse
[24]	Stop
[26]	DC Brake
[27]	Coast
[28]	Freeze output
[29]	Start timer 0
[30]	Start timer 1
[31]	Start timer 2
[32]	Set digital out A low
[33]	Set digital out B low
[34]	Set digital out C low
[35]	Set digital out D low
[36]	Set digital out E low
[37]	Set digital out F low
[38]	Set digital out A high
[39]	Set digital out B high
[40]	Set digital out C high
[41]	Set digital out D high
[42]	Set digital out E high
[43]	Set digital out F high
[60]	Reset Counter A
[61]	Reset Counter B
[70]	Start Timer 3
[71]	Start Timer 4
[72]	Start Timer 5
[73]	Start Timer 6
[74]	Start Timer 7

23-02 OFF Time

Array [10]

Range:

0 N/A* [0 - 0 N/A]

Function:

Sets the OFF time for the Timed Action.

NB!

The frequency converter has no back up of the clock function and the set date/time will reset to default (2000-01-01 00:00) after a power down unless a Real Time Clock module with back up is installed. In par. 0-79 Clock *Fault* it is possible to program for a Warning in case clock has not been set properly, e.g. after a power down.

23-03 OFF Action

Array [10]

Option:		Function:
		Select the action during OFF Time. See par. 13-52 SL *Controller Action* for descriptions of the options.
[0] *	Disabled	
[1]	No action	
[2]	Select set-up 1	
[3]	Select set-up 2	
[4]	Select set-up 3	
[5]	Select set-up 4	
[10]	Select preset ref 0	
[11]	Select preset ref 1	
[12]	Select preset ref 2	
[13]	Select preset ref 3	
[14]	Select preset ref 4	
[15]	Select preset ref 5	
[16]	Select preset ref 6	
[17]	Select preset ref 7	
[18]	Select ramp 1	
[19]	Select ramp 2	
[22]	Run	
[23]	Run reverse	
[24]	Stop	
[26]	DC Brake	
[27]	Coast	
[28]	Freeze output	
[29]	Start timer 0	
[30]	Start timer 1	
[31]	Start timer 2	
[32]	Set digital out A low	
[33]	Set digital out B low	
[34]	Set digital out C low	
[35]	Set digital out D low	
[36]	Set digital out E low	
[37]	Set digital out F low	
[38]	Set digital out A high	
[39]	Set digital out B high	
[40]	Set digital out C high	
[41]	Set digital out D high	
[42]	Set digital out E high	
[43]	Set digital out F high	
[60]	Reset Counter A	
[61]	Reset Counter B	
[70]	Start Timer 3	
[71]	Start Timer 4	

[72]	Start Timer 5
[73]	Start Timer 6
[74]	Start Timer 7

23-04 Occurrence

Array [10]

Option:		Function:
		Select which day(s) the Timed Action applies to. Specify working/non-working days in par. 0-81 Working *Days*, par. 0-82 Additional *Working Days* and par. 0-83 Additional *Non-Working Days*.
[0] *	All days	
[1]	Working days	
[2]	Non-working days	
[3]	Monday	
[4]	Tuesday	
[5]	Wednesday	
[6]	Thursday	
[7]	Friday	
[8]	Saturday	
[9]	Sunday	

5

5.2.12 Water Application Functions, 29-**

The group contains parameters used for monitoring water / wastewater applications.

29-00 Pipe Fill Enable

Option:		Function:
[0] *	Disabled	Select Enabled to fill pipes at a user specified rate.
[1]	Enabled	Select Enabled to fill pipes with a user specified rate.

29-01 Pipe Fill Speed [RPM]

Range:		Function:
Speed Low Limit*	[Speed Low Limit - Speed High Limit]	Set the filling speed for filling horizontal pipe systems. The speed can be selected in Hz or RPM depending on the choices made in par. 4-11 / par. 4-13 (RPM) or in par. 4-12 / par. 4-14 (Hz).

29-02 Pipe Fill Speed [Hz]

Range:		Function:
Motor Speed Low Limit*	[Speed Low Limit - Speed High Limit]	Set the filling speed for filling horizontal pipe systems. The speed can be selected in Hz or RPM depending on the choices made in par. 4-11 / par. 4-13 (RPM) or in par. 4-12 / par. 4-14 (Hz).

29-03 Pipe Fill Time

Range:		Function:
0 s*	[0 - 3600 s]	Set the specified time for pipe filling of horizontal pipe systems.

29-04 Pipe Fill Rate

Range:		Function:
0.001 units/s*	[0.001 – 999999.999 units/s]	Specifies the filling rate in units/second using the PI controller. Filling rate units are feedback units/second. This function is used for filling-up vertical pipe systems but will be active when the filling-time has expired, no matter what , until the pipe fill-set-point set in par. 29-05 is reached.

29-05 Filled Setpoint

Range:		Function:
0 s*	[0 – 999999,999 s]	Specifies the Filled Set-point at which the Pipe Fill Function will be disabled and the PID controller will take control. This function can be used both for horizontal and vertical pipe systems.

5.3 Parameter Options

5.3.1 Default settings

Changes during operation:

"TRUE" means that the parameter can be changed while the frequency converter is in operation and "FALSE" means that the frequency converter must be stopped before a change can be made.

4-Set-up:

'All set-up': the parameter can be set individually in each of the four set-ups, i. e. one single parameter can have four different data values.

'1 set-up': data value will be the same in all set-ups.

SR:

Size related

N/A:

No default value available.

Conversion index:

This number refers to a conversion figure used when writing or reading by means of a frequency converter.

Conv. index	100	67	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6
Conv. factor	1	1/60	1000000	100000	10000	1000	100	10	1	0.1	0.01	0.001	0.0001	0.00001	0.000001

Data type	Description	Type
2	Integer 8	Int8
3	Integer 16	Int16
4	Integer 32	Int32
5	Unsigned 8	Uint8
6	Unsigned 16	Uint16
7	Unsigned 32	Uint32
9	Visible String	VisStr
33	Normalized value 2 bytes	N2
35	Bit sequence of 16 boolean variables	V2
54	Time difference w/o date	TimD

5.3.2 Operation/Display 0-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	FC 302 only	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
0-0* Basic Settings							
0-01	Language	[0] English	1 set-up		TRUE	-	Uint8
0-02	Motor Speed Unit	[0] RPM	2 set-ups		FALSE	-	Uint8
0-03	Regional Settings	[0] International	2 set-ups		FALSE	-	Uint8
0-04	Operating State at Power-up	[0] Resume	All set-ups		TRUE	-	Uint8
0-05	Local Mode Unit	[0] As Motor Speed Unit	2 set-ups		FALSE	-	Uint8
0-1* Set-up Operations							
0-10	Active Set-up	[1] Set-up 1	1 set-up		TRUE	-	Uint8
0-11	Programming Set-up	[9] Active Set-up	All set-ups		TRUE	-	Uint8
0-12	This Set-up Linked to	[0] Not linked	All set-ups		FALSE	-	Uint8
0-13	Readout: Linked Set-ups	0 N/A	All set-ups		FALSE	0	Uint16
0-14	Readout: Prog. Set-ups / Channel	0 N/A	All set-ups		TRUE	0	Int32
0-2* LCP Display							
0-20	Display Line 1.1 Small	1601	All set-ups		TRUE	-	Uint16
0-21	Display Line 1.2 Small	1662	All set-ups		TRUE	-	Uint16
0-22	Display Line 1.3 Small	1614	All set-ups		TRUE	-	Uint16
0-23	Display Line 2 Large	1613	All set-ups		TRUE	-	Uint16
0-24	Display Line 3 Large	1652	All set-ups		TRUE	-	Uint16
0-25	My Personal Menu	ExpressionLimit	1 set-up		TRUE	0	Uint16
0-3* LCP Custom Readout							
0-30	Custom Readout Unit	[1] %	All set-ups		TRUE	-	Uint8
0-31	Custom Readout Min Value	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups		TRUE	-2	Int32
0-32	Custom Readout Max Value	100.00 CustomReadoutUnit	All set-ups		TRUE	-2	Int32
0-37	Display Text 1	0 N/A	1 set-up		TRUE	0	VisStr[25]
0-38	Display Text 2	0 N/A	1 set-up		TRUE	0	VisStr[25]
0-39	Display Text 3	0 N/A	1 set-up		TRUE	0	VisStr[25]
0-4* LCP Keypad							
0-40	[Hand on] Key on LCP	[1] Enabled	All set-ups		TRUE	-	Uint8
0-41	[Off] Key on LCP	[1] Enabled	All set-ups		TRUE	-	Uint8
0-42	[Auto on] Key on LCP	[1] Enabled	All set-ups		TRUE	-	Uint8
0-43	[Reset] Key on LCP	[1] Enabled	All set-ups		TRUE	-	Uint8
0-44	[Off/Reset] Key on LCP	[1] Enabled	All set-ups		TRUE	-	Uint8
0-45	[Drive Bypass] Key on LCP	[1] Enabled	All set-ups		TRUE	-	Uint8
0-5* Copy/Save							
0-50	LCP Copy	[0] No copy	All set-ups		FALSE	-	Uint8
0-51	Set-up Copy	[0] No copy	All set-ups		FALSE	-	Uint8
0-6* Password							
0-60	Main Menu Password	100 N/A	1 set-up		TRUE	0	Uint16
0-61	Access to Main Menu w/o Password	[0] Full access	1 set-up		TRUE	-	Uint8
0-65	Personal Menu Password	200 N/A	1 set-up		TRUE	0	Uint16
0-66	Access to Personal Menu w/o Password	[0] Full access	1 set-up		TRUE	-	Uint8

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
0-7* Clock Settings						
0-70	Date and Time	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	TimeOfDay
0-71	Date Format	[0] YYYY-MM-DD	1 set-up	TRUE	-	Uint8
0-72	Time Format	[0] 24 h	1 set-up	TRUE	-	Uint8
0-74	DST/Summertime	[0] Off	1 set-up	TRUE	-	Uint8
0-76	DST/Summertime Start	ExpressionLimit	1 set-up	TRUE	0	TimeOfDay
0-77	DST/Summertime End	ExpressionLimit	1 set-up	TRUE	0	TimeOfDay
0-79	Clock Fault	null	1 set-up	TRUE	-	Uint8
0-81	Working Days	null	1 set-up	TRUE	-	Uint8
0-82	Additional Working Days	ExpressionLimit	1 set-up	TRUE	0	TimeOfDay
0-83	Additional Non-Working Days	ExpressionLimit	1 set-up	TRUE	0	TimeOfDay
0-89	Date and Time Readout	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	VisStr[25]

5.3.3 Load/Motor 1-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
1-0* General Settings						
1-00	Configuration Mode	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
1-01	Motor Control Principle	null	All set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
1-03	Torque Characteristics	[3] Auto Energy Optim. VT	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
1-1* Motor Selection						
1-10	Motor Construction	[0] Asynchron	All set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
1-2* Motor Data						
1-20	Motor Power [kW]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	FALSE	1	Uint32
1-21	Motor Power [HP]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	FALSE	-2	Uint32
1-22	Motor Voltage	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
1-23	Motor Frequency	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
1-24	Motor Current	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	FALSE	-2	Uint32
1-25	Motor Nominal Speed	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	FALSE	67	Uint16
1-28	Motor Rotation Check	[0] Off	All set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
1-29	Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)	[0] Off	All set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
1-3* Adv. Motor Data						
1-30	Stator Resistance (Rs)	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	FALSE	-4	Uint32
1-31	Rotor Resistance (Rr)	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	FALSE	-4	Uint32
1-35	Main Reactance (Xh)	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	FALSE	-4	Uint32
1-36	Iron Loss Resistance (Rfe)	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	FALSE	-3	Uint32
1-39	Motor Poles	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint8
1-5* Load Indep. Setting						
1-50	Motor Magnetisation at Zero Speed	100 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
1-51	Min Speed Normal Magnetising [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
1-52	Min Speed Normal Magnetising [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
1-6* Load Depen. Setting						
1-60	Low Speed Load Compensation	100 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int16
1-61	High Speed Load Compensation	100 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int16
1-62	Slip Compensation	0 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int16
1-63	Slip Compensation Time Constant	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
1-64	Resonance Dampening	100 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
1-65	Resonance Dampening Time Constant	5 ms	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Uint8
1-7* Start Adjustments						
1-71	Start Delay	0.0 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
1-73	Flying Start	[0] Disabled	All set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
1-74	Start Speed [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
1-75	Start Speed [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
1-76	Start Current	0.00 A	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
1-8* Stop Adjustments						
1-80	Function at Stop	[0] Coast	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
1-81	Min Speed for Function at Stop [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
1-82	Min Speed for Function at Stop [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
1-86	Trip Speed Low [RPM]	0 RPM	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
1-87	Trip Speed Low [Hz]	0 Hz	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
1-9* Motor Temperature						
1-90	Motor Thermal Protection	[4] ETR trip 1	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
1-91	Motor External Fan	[0] No	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint16
1-93	Thermistor Source	[0] None	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8

5.3.4 Brakes 2-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
2-0* DC-Brake						
2-00	DC Hold/Preheat Current	50 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
2-01	DC Brake Current	50 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
2-02	DC Braking Time	10.0 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
2-03	DC Brake Cut In Speed [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
2-04	DC Brake Cut In Speed [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
2-1* Brake Energy Funct.						
2-10	Brake Function	[0] Off	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
2-11	Brake Resistor (ohm)	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
2-12	Brake Power Limit (kW)	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
2-13	Brake Power Monitoring	[0] Off	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
2-15	Brake Check	[0] Off	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
2-16	AC brake Max. Current	100.0 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint32
2-17	Over-voltage Control	[2] Enabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8

5.3.5 Reference / Ramps 3-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
3-0* Reference Limits						
3-02	Minimum Reference	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
3-03	Maximum Reference	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
3-04	Reference Function	[0] Sum	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
3-1* References						
3-10	Preset Reference	0.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
3-11	Jog Speed [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
3-13	Reference Site	[0] Linked to Hand / Auto	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
3-14	Preset Relative Reference	0.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int32
3-15	Reference 1 Source	[1] Analog input 53	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
3-16	Reference 2 Source	[0] No function	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
3-17	Reference 3 Source	[0] No function	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
3-19	Jog Speed [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
3-4* Ramp 1						
3-41	Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
3-42	Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
3-5* Ramp 2						
3-51	Ramp 2 Ramp Up Time	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
3-52	Ramp 2 Ramp Down Time	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
3-8* Other Ramps						
3-80	Jog Ramp Time	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
3-81	Quick Stop Ramp Time	ExpressionLimit	2 set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
3-84	Initial Ramp Time	0.00 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
3-85	Check Valve Ramp Time	0.00 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
3-86	Check Valve Ramp End Speed [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
3-87	Check Valve Ramp End Speed [HZ]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
3-88	Final Ramp Time	0.00 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
3-9* Digital Pot.Meter						
3-90	Step Size	0.10 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
3-91	Ramp Time	1.00 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
3-92	Power Restore	[0] Off	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
3-93	Maximum Limit	100 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int16
3-94	Minimum Limit	0 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int16
3-95	Ramp Delay	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	TimD

5.3.6 Limits / Warnings 4-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
4-1* Motor Limits						
4-10	Motor Speed Direction	[0] Clockwise	All set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
4-11	Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
4-12	Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
4-13	Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
4-14	Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
4-16	Torque Limit Motor Mode	110.0 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
4-17	Torque Limit Generator Mode	100.0 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
4-18	Current Limit	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint32
4-19	Max Output Frequency	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	FALSE	-1	Uint16
4-5* Adj. Warnings						
4-50	Warning Current Low	0.00 A	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
4-51	Warning Current High	ImaxVLT (P1637)	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
4-52	Warning Speed Low	0 RPM	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
4-53	Warning Speed High	outputSpeedHighLimit (P413)	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
4-54	Warning Reference Low	-999999.999 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
4-55	Warning Reference High	999999.999 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
4-56	Warning Feedback Low	-999999.999 ReferenceFeedbackUnit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
4-57	Warning Feedback High	999999.999 ReferenceFeedbackUnit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
4-58	Missing Motor Phase Function	[1] On	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
4-6* Speed Bypass						
4-60	Bypass Speed From [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
4-61	Bypass Speed From [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
4-62	Bypass Speed To [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
4-63	Bypass Speed To [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
4-64	Semi-Auto Bypass Set-up	[0] Off	All set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8

5.3.7 Digital In/Out 5-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
5-0* Digital I/O mode						
5-00	Digital I/O Mode	[0] PNP - Active at 24V	All set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
5-01	Terminal 27 Mode	[0] Input	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-02	Terminal 29 Mode	[0] Input	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-1* Digital Inputs						
5-10	Terminal 18 Digital Input	[8] Start	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-11	Terminal 19 Digital Input	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-12	Terminal 27 Digital Input	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-13	Terminal 29 Digital Input	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-14	Terminal 32 Digital Input	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-15	Terminal 33 Digital Input	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-16	Terminal X30/2 Digital Input	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-17	Terminal X30/3 Digital Input	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-18	Terminal X30/4 Digital Input	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-3* Digital Outputs						
5-30	Terminal 27 Digital Output	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-31	Terminal 29 Digital Output	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-32	Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101)	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-33	Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101)	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-4* Relays						
5-40	Function Relay	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-41	On Delay, Relay	0.01 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
5-42	Off Delay, Relay	0.01 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
5-5* Pulse Input						
5-50	Term. 29 Low Frequency	100 Hz	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
5-51	Term. 29 High Frequency	100 Hz	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
5-52	Term. 29 Low Ref./Feedb. Value	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
5-53	Term. 29 High Ref./Feedb. Value	100.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
5-54	Pulse Filter Time Constant #29	100 ms	All set-ups	FALSE	-3	Uint16
5-55	Term. 33 Low Frequency	100 Hz	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
5-56	Term. 33 High Frequency	100 Hz	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
5-57	Term. 33 Low Ref./Feedb. Value	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
5-58	Term. 33 High Ref./Feedb. Value	100.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
5-59	Pulse Filter Time Constant #33	100 ms	All set-ups	FALSE	-3	Uint16
5-6* Pulse Output						
5-60	Terminal 27 Pulse Output Variable	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-62	Pulse Output Max Freq #27	5000 Hz	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
5-63	Terminal 29 Pulse Output Variable	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-65	Pulse Output Max Freq #29	5000 Hz	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
5-66	Terminal X30/6 Pulse Output Variable	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
5-68	Pulse Output Max Freq #X30/6	5000 Hz	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
5-9* Bus Controlled						
5-90	Digital & Relay Bus Control	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
5-93	Pulse Out #27 Bus Control	0.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	N2
5-94	Pulse Out #27 Timeout Preset	0.00 %	1 set-up	TRUE	-2	Uint16
5-95	Pulse Out #29 Bus Control	0.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	N2
5-96	Pulse Out #29 Timeout Preset	0.00 %	1 set-up	TRUE	-2	Uint16
5-97	Pulse Out #X30/6 Bus Control	0.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	N2
5-98	Pulse Out #X30/6 Timeout Preset	0.00 %	1 set-up	TRUE	-2	Uint16

5.3.8 Analog In/Out 6-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
6-0* Analog I/O Mode						
6-00	Live Zero Timeout Time	10 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
6-01	Live Zero Timeout Function	[0] Off	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
6-1* Analog Input 53						
6-10	Terminal 53 Low Voltage	0.07 V	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
6-11	Terminal 53 High Voltage	10.00 V	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
6-12	Terminal 53 Low Current	4.00 mA	All set-ups	TRUE	-5	Int16
6-13	Terminal 53 High Current	20.00 mA	All set-ups	TRUE	-5	Int16
6-14	Terminal 53 Low Ref./Feedb. Value	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
6-15	Terminal 53 High Ref./Feedb. Value	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
6-16	Terminal 53 Filter Time Constant	0.001 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Uint16
6-17	Terminal 53 Live Zero	[1] Enabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
6-2* Analog Input 54						
6-20	Terminal 54 Low Voltage	0.07 V	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
6-21	Terminal 54 High Voltage	10.00 V	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
6-22	Terminal 54 Low Current	4.00 mA	All set-ups	TRUE	-5	Int16
6-23	Terminal 54 High Current	20.00 mA	All set-ups	TRUE	-5	Int16
6-24	Terminal 54 Low Ref./Feedb. Value	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
6-25	Terminal 54 High Ref./Feedb. Value	100.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
6-26	Terminal 54 Filter Time Constant	0.001 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Uint16
6-27	Terminal 54 Live Zero	[1] Enabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
6-3* Analog Input X30/11						
6-30	Terminal X30/11 Low Voltage	0.07 V	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
6-31	Terminal X30/11 High Voltage	10.00 V	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
6-34	Term. X30/11 Low Ref./Feedb. Value	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
6-35	Term. X30/11 High Ref./Feedb. Value	100.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
6-36	Term. X30/11 Filter Time Constant	0.001 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Uint16
6-37	Term. X30/11 Live Zero	[1] Enabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
6-4* Analog Input X30/12						
6-40	Terminal X30/12 Low Voltage	0.07 V	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
6-41	Terminal X30/12 High Voltage	10.00 V	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
6-44	Term. X30/12 Low Ref./Feedb. Value	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
6-45	Term. X30/12 High Ref./Feedb. Value	100.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
6-46	Term. X30/12 Filter Time Constant	0.001 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Uint16
6-47	Term. X30/12 Live Zero	[1] Enabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
6-5* Analog Output 42						
6-50	Terminal 42 Output	[100] Output freq. 0-100	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
6-51	Terminal 42 Output Min Scale	0.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
6-52	Terminal 42 Output Max Scale	100.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
6-53	Terminal 42 Output Bus Control	0.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	N2
6-54	Terminal 42 Output Timeout Preset	0.00 %	1 set-up	TRUE	-2	Uint16
6-6* Analog Output X30/8						
6-60	Terminal X30/8 Output	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
6-61	Terminal X30/8 Min. Scale	0.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
6-62	Terminal X30/8 Max. Scale	100.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
6-63	Terminal X30/8 Output Bus Control	0.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	N2
6-64	Terminal X30/8 Output Timeout Preset	0.00 %	1 set-up	TRUE	-2	Uint16

5.3.9 Comm. and Options 8-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
8-0* General Settings						
8-01	Control Site	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-02	Control Source	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-03	Control Timeout Time	ExpressionLimit	1 set-up	TRUE	-1	Uint32
8-04	Control Timeout Function	[0] Off	1 set-up	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-05	End-of-Timeout Function	[1] Resume set-up	1 set-up	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-06	Reset Control Timeout	[0] Do not reset	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-07	Diagnosis Trigger	[0] Disable	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-1* Control Settings						
8-10	Control Profile	[0] FC profile	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-13	Configurable Status Word STW	[1] Profile Default	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-14	Configurable Control Word CTW	[1] Profile default	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-3* FC Port Settings						
8-30	Protocol	null	1 set-up	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-31	Address	ExpressionLimit	1 set-up	TRUE	0	Uint8
8-32	Baud Rate	null	1 set-up	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-33	Parity / Stop Bits	null	1 set-up	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-35	Minimum Response Delay	ExpressionLimit	1 set-up	TRUE	-3	Uint16
8-36	Max Response Delay	ExpressionLimit	1 set-up	TRUE	-3	Uint16
8-37	Maximum Inter-Char Delay	ExpressionLimit	1 set-up	TRUE	-5	Uint16
8-4* FC MC protocol set						
8-40	Telegram Selection	[1] Standard telegram 1	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-5* Digital / Bus						
8-50	Coasting Select	[3] Logic OR	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-52	DC Brake Select	[3] Logic OR	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-53	Start Select	[3] Logic OR	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-54	Reversing Select	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-55	Set-up Select	[3] Logic OR	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-56	Preset Reference Select	[3] Logic OR	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-7* BACnet						
8-70	BACnet Device Instance	1 N/A	1 set-up	TRUE	0	Uint32
8-72	MS/TP Max Masters	127 N/A	1 set-up	TRUE	0	Uint8
8-73	MS/TP Max Info Frames	1 N/A	1 set-up	TRUE	0	Uint16
8-74	"I-Am" Service	[0] Send at power-up	1 set-up	TRUE	-	Uint8
8-75	Initialisation Password	ExpressionLimit	1 set-up	TRUE	0	VisStr[20]
8-8* FC Port Diagnostics						
8-80	Bus Message Count	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
8-81	Bus Error Count	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
8-82	Slave Message Rcvd	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
8-83	Slave Error Count	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
8-9* Bus Jog / Feedback						
8-90	Bus Jog 1 Speed	100 RPM	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
8-91	Bus Jog 2 Speed	200 RPM	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
8-94	Bus Feedback 1	0 N/A	1 set-up	TRUE	0	N2
8-95	Bus Feedback 2	0 N/A	1 set-up	TRUE	0	N2
8-96	Bus Feedback 3	0 N/A	1 set-up	TRUE	0	N2

5.3.10 Profibus 9-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
9-00	Setpoint	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
9-07	Actual Value	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
9-15	PCD Write Configuration	ExpressionLimit	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint16
9-16	PCD Read Configuration	ExpressionLimit	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint16
9-18	Node Address	126 N/A	1 set-up	TRUE	0	Uint8
9-22	Telegram Selection	[108] PPO 8	1 set-up	TRUE	-	Uint8
9-23	Parameters for Signals	0	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint16
9-27	Parameter Edit	[1] Enabled	2 set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint16
9-28	Process Control	[1] Enable cyclic master	2 set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
9-44	Fault Message Counter	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
9-45	Fault Code	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
9-47	Fault Number	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
9-52	Fault Situation Counter	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
9-53	Profibus Warning Word	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	V2
9-63	Actual Baud Rate	[255] No baudrate found	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
9-64	Device Identification	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
9-65	Profile Number	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	OctStr[2]
9-67	Control Word 1	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	V2
9-68	Status Word 1	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	V2
9-71	Profibus Save Data Values	[0] Off	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
9-72	ProfibusDriveReset	[0] No action	1 set-up	FALSE	-	Uint8
9-80	Defined Parameters (1)	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
9-81	Defined Parameters (2)	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
9-82	Defined Parameters (3)	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
9-83	Defined Parameters (4)	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
9-84	Defined Parameters (5)	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
9-90	Changed Parameters (1)	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
9-91	Changed Parameters (2)	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
9-92	Changed Parameters (3)	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
9-93	Changed Parameters (4)	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
9-94	Changed Parameters (5)	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16

5.3.11 CAN Fieldbus 10-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
10-0* Common Settings						
10-00	CAN Protocol	null	2 set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
10-01	Baud Rate Select	null	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
10-02	MAC ID	ExpressionLimit	2 set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
10-05	Readout Transmit Error Counter	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
10-06	Readout Receive Error Counter	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
10-07	Readout Bus Off Counter	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
10-1* DeviceNet						
10-10	Process Data Type Selection	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
10-11	Process Data Config Write	ExpressionLimit	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint16
10-12	Process Data Config Read	ExpressionLimit	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint16
10-13	Warning Parameter	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
10-14	Net Reference	[0] Off	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
10-15	Net Control	[0] Off	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
10-2* COS Filters						
10-20	COS Filter 1	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
10-21	COS Filter 2	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
10-22	COS Filter 3	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
10-23	COS Filter 4	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
10-3* Parameter Access						
10-30	Array Index	0 N/A	2 set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
10-31	Store Data Values	[0] Off	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
10-32	Devicenet Revision	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
10-33	Store Always	[0] Off	1 set-up	TRUE	-	Uint8
10-34	DeviceNet Product Code	130 N/A	1 set-up	TRUE	0	Uint16
10-39	Devicenet F Parameters	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32

5.3.12 Smart Logic 13-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
13-0* SLC Settings						
13-00	SL Controller Mode	null	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
13-01	Start Event	null	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
13-02	Stop Event	null	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
13-03	Reset SLC	[0] Do not reset SLC	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
13-1* Comparators						
13-10	Comparator Operand	null	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
13-11	Comparator Operator	null	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
13-12	Comparator Value	ExpressionLimit	2 set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
13-2* Timers						
13-20	SL Controller Timer	ExpressionLimit	1 set-up	TRUE	-3	TimD
13-4* Logic Rules						
13-40	Logic Rule Boolean 1	null	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
13-41	Logic Rule Operator 1	null	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
13-42	Logic Rule Boolean 2	null	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
13-43	Logic Rule Operator 2	null	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
13-44	Logic Rule Boolean 3	null	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
13-5* States						
13-51	SL Controller Event	null	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
13-52	SL Controller Action	null	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8

5.3.13 Special Functions 14-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
14-0* Inverter Switching						
14-00	Switching Pattern	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
14-01	Switching Frequency	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
14-03	Overmodulation	[1] On	All set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
14-04	PWM Random	[0] Off	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
14-1* Mains On/Off						
14-10	Mains Failure	[0] No function	All set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
14-11	Mains Voltage at Mains Fault	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
14-12	Function at Mains Imbalance	[3] Derate	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
14-2* Reset Functions						
14-20	Reset Mode	[10] Automatic reset x 10	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
14-21	Automatic Restart Time	10 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
14-22	Operation Mode	[0] Normal operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
14-23	Typecode Setting	null	2 set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
14-25	Trip Delay at Torque Limit	60 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
14-26	Trip Delay at Inverter Fault	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
14-28	Production Settings	[0] No action	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
14-29	Service Code	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int32
14-3* Current Limit Ctrl.						
14-30	Current Lim Ctrl, Proportional Gain	100 %	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
14-31	Current Lim Ctrl, Integration Time	0.020 s	All set-ups	FALSE	-3	Uint16
14-4* Energy Optimising						
14-40	VT Level	66 %	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint8
14-41	AEO Minimum Magnetisation	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
14-42	Minimum AEO Frequency	10 Hz	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
14-43	Motor Cosphi	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
14-5* Environment						
14-50	RFI Filter	[1] On	1 set-up	FALSE	-	Uint8
14-52	Fan Control	[0] Auto	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
14-53	Fan Monitor	[1] Warning	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
14-55	Output Filter	[0] No Filter	1 set-up	FALSE	-	Uint8
14-59	Actual Number of Inverter Units	ExpressionLimit	1 set-up	FALSE	0	Uint8
14-6* Auto Derate						
14-60	Function at Over Temperature	[1] Derate	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
14-61	Function at Inverter Overload	[1] Derate	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
14-62	Inv. Overload Derate Current	95 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
14-8* Options						
14-80	Option Supplied by External 24VDC	[0] No	2 set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8

5.3.14 FC Information 15-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
15-0* Operating Data						
15-00	Operating Hours	0 h	All set-ups	FALSE	74	Uint32
15-01	Running Hours	0 h	All set-ups	FALSE	74	Uint32
15-02	kWh Counter	0 kWh	All set-ups	FALSE	75	Uint32
15-03	Power Up's	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint32
15-04	Over Temp's	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
15-05	Over Volt's	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
15-06	Reset kWh Counter	[0] Do not reset	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
15-07	Reset Running Hours Counter	[0] Do not reset	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
15-08	Number of Starts	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint32
15-1* Data Log Settings						
15-10	Logging Source	0	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint16
15-11	Logging Interval	ExpressionLimit	2 set-ups	TRUE	-3	TimD
15-12	Trigger Event	[0] False	1 set-up	TRUE	-	Uint8
15-13	Logging Mode	[0] Log always	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
15-14	Samples Before Trigger	50 N/A	2 set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
15-2* Historic Log						
15-20	Historic Log: Event	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint8
15-21	Historic Log: Value	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint32
15-22	Historic Log: Time	0 ms	All set-ups	FALSE	-3	Uint32
15-23	Historic Log: Date and Time	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	FALSE	0	TimeOfDay
15-3* Alarm Log						
15-30	Alarm Log: Error Code	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint8
15-31	Alarm Log: Value	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Int16
15-32	Alarm Log: Time	0 s	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint32
15-33	Alarm Log: Date and Time	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	FALSE	0	TimeOfDay
15-34	Alarm Log: Setpoint	0.000 ProcessCtrlUnit	All set-ups	FALSE	-3	Int32
15-35	Alarm Log: Feedback	0.000 ProcessCtrlUnit	All set-ups	FALSE	-3	Int32
15-36	Alarm Log: Current Demand	0 %	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint8
15-37	Alarm Log: Process Ctrl Unit	[0]	All set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
15-4* Drive Identification						
15-40	FC Type	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[6]
15-41	Power Section	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[20]
15-42	Voltage	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[20]
15-43	Software Version	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[5]
15-44	Ordered Typecode String	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[40]
15-45	Actual Typecode String	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[40]
15-46	Frequency Converter Ordering No	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[8]
15-47	Power Card Ordering No	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[8]
15-48	LCP Id No	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[20]
15-49	SW ID Control Card	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[20]
15-50	SW ID Power Card	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[20]
15-51	Frequency Converter Serial Number	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[10]
15-53	Power Card Serial Number	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[19]

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
15-6* Option Ident						
15-60	Option Mounted	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[30]
15-61	Option SW Version	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[20]
15-62	Option Ordering No	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[8]
15-63	Option Serial No	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[18]
15-70	Option in Slot A	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[30]
15-71	Slot A Option SW Version	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[20]
15-72	Option in Slot B	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[30]
15-73	Slot B Option SW Version	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[20]
15-74	Option in Slot C0	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[30]
15-75	Slot C0 Option SW Version	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[20]
15-76	Option in Slot C1	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[30]
15-77	Slot C1 Option SW Version	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[20]
15-9* Parameter Info						
15-92	Defined Parameters	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
15-93	Modified Parameters	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
15-98	Drive Identification	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	VisStr[40]
15-99	Parameter Metadata	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16

5.3.15 Data Readouts 16-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
16-0* General Status						
16-00	Control Word	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	V2
16-01	Reference [Unit]	0.000 ReferenceFeedbackUnit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
16-02	Reference [%]	0.0 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Int16
16-03	Status Word	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	V2
16-05	Main Actual Value [%]	0.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	N2
16-09	Custom Readout	0.00 CustomReadoutUnit	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int32
16-1* Motor Status						
16-10	Power [kW]	0.00 kW	All set-ups	TRUE	1	Int32
16-11	Power [hp]	0.00 hp	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int32
16-12	Motor Voltage	0.0 V	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
16-13	Frequency	0.0 Hz	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
16-14	Motor Current	0.00 A	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int32
16-15	Frequency [%]	0.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	N2
16-16	Torque [Nm]	0.0 Nm	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Int32
16-17	Speed [RPM]	0 RPM	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Int32
16-18	Motor Thermal	0 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
16-22	Torque [%]	0 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int16
16-3* Drive Status						
16-30	DC Link Voltage	0 V	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
16-32	Brake Energy /s	0.000 kW	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
16-33	Brake Energy /2 min	0.000 kW	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
16-34	Heatsink Temp.	0 °C	All set-ups	TRUE	100	Uint8
16-35	Inverter Thermal	0 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
16-36	Inv. Nom. Current	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
16-37	Inv. Max. Current	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
16-38	SL Controller State	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
16-39	Control Card Temp.	0 °C	All set-ups	TRUE	100	Uint8
16-40	Logging Buffer Full	[0] No	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
16-5* Ref. & Feedb.						
16-50	External Reference	0.0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Int16
16-52	Feedback [Unit]	0.000 ProcessCtrlUnit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
16-53	Digi Pot Reference	0.00 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
16-54	Feedback 1 [Unit]	0.000 ProcessCtrlUnit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
16-55	Feedback 2 [Unit]	0.000 ProcessCtrlUnit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
16-56	Feedback 3 [Unit]	0.000 ProcessCtrlUnit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
16-58	PID Output [%]	0.0 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Int16
16-59	Adjusted Setpoint	0.000 ProcessCtrlUnit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
16-6* Inputs & Outputs						
16-60	Digital Input	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
16-61	Terminal 53 Switch Setting	[0] Current	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
16-62	Analog Input 53	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
16-63	Terminal 54 Switch Setting	[0] Current	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
16-64	Analog Input 54	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
16-65	Analog Output 42 [mA]	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int16
16-66	Digital Output [bin]	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int16
16-67	Pulse Input #29 [Hz]	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int32
16-68	Pulse Input #33 [Hz]	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int32
16-69	Pulse Output #27 [Hz]	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int32
16-70	Pulse Output #29 [Hz]	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int32
16-71	Relay Output [bin]	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
16-72	Counter A	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int32
16-73	Counter B	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int32
16-75	Analog In X30/11	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
16-76	Analog In X30/12	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
16-77	Analog Out X30/8 [mA]	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int16
16-8* Fieldbus & FC Port						
16-80	Fieldbus CTW 1	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	V2
16-82	Fieldbus REF 1	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	N2
16-84	Comm. Option STW	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	V2
16-85	FC Port CTW 1	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	V2
16-86	FC Port REF 1	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	N2
16-9* Diagnosis Readouts						
16-90	Alarm Word	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
16-91	Alarm Word 2	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
16-92	Warning Word	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
16-93	Warning Word 2	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
16-94	Ext. Status Word	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
16-95	Ext. Status Word 2	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
16-96	Maintenance Word	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32

5.3.16 Data Readouts 2 18-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
18-0* Maintenance Log						
18-00	Maintenance Log: Item	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint8
18-01	Maintenance Log: Action	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint8
18-02	Maintenance Log: Time	0 s	All set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint32
18-03	Maintenance Log: Date and Time	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	FALSE	0	TimeOfDay
18-3* Inputs & Outputs						
18-30	Analog Input X42/1	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	-3	Int32
18-31	Analog Input X42/3	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	-3	Int32
18-32	Analog Input X42/5	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	-3	Int32
18-33	Analog Out X42/7 [V]	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	-3	Int16
18-34	Analog Out X42/9 [V]	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	-3	Int16
18-35	Analog Out X42/11 [V]	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	-3	Int16

5.3.17 FC Closed Loop 20-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
20-0* Feedback						
20-00	Feedback 1 Source	[2] Analog input 54	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
20-01	Feedback 1 Conversion	[0] Linear	All set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
20-02	Feedback 1 Source Unit	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
20-03	Feedback 2 Source	[0] No function	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
20-04	Feedback 2 Conversion	[0] Linear	All set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
20-05	Feedback 2 Source Unit	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
20-06	Feedback 3 Source	[0] No function	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
20-07	Feedback 3 Conversion	[0] Linear	All set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
20-08	Feedback 3 Source Unit	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
20-12	Reference/Feedback Unit	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
20-2* Feedback/Setpoint						
20-20	Feedback Function	[4] Maximum	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
20-21	Setpoint 1	0.000 ProcessCtrlUnit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
20-22	Setpoint 2	0.000 ProcessCtrlUnit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
20-23	Setpoint 3	0.000 ProcessCtrlUnit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
20-7* PID Autotuning						
20-70	Closed Loop Type	[0] Auto	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
20-71	PID Performance	[0] Normal	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
20-72	PID Output Change	0.10 N/A	2 set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
20-73	Minimum Feedback Level	-999999.000 ProcessCtrlUnit	2 set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
20-74	Maximum Feedback Level	999999.000 ProcessCtrlUnit	2 set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
20-79	PID Autotuning	[0] Disabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
20-8* PID Basic Settings						
20-81	PID Normal/ Inverse Control	[0] Normal	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
20-82	PID Start Speed [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
20-83	PID Start Speed [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
20-84	On Reference Bandwidth	5 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
20-9* PID Controller						
20-91	PID Anti Windup	[1] On	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
20-93	PID Proportional Gain	2.00 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
20-94	PID Integral Time	8.00 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
20-95	PID Differentiation Time	0.00 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
20-96	PID Diff. Gain Limit	5.0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16

5.3.18 Ext. Closed Loop 21-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
21-0* Ext. CL Autotuning						
21-00	Closed Loop Type	[0] Auto	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
21-01	PID Performance	[0] Normal	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
21-02	PID Output Change	0.10 N/A	2 set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
21-03	Minimum Feedback Level	-999999.000 N/A	2 set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
21-04	Maximum Feedback Level	999999.000 N/A	2 set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
21-09	PID Auto Tuning	[0] Disabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
21-1* Ext. CL 1 Ref./Fb.						
21-10	Ext. 1 Ref./Feedback Unit	[0]	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
21-11	Ext. 1 Minimum Reference	0.000 ExtPID1Unit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
21-12	Ext. 1 Maximum Reference	100.000 ExtPID1Unit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
21-13	Ext. 1 Reference Source	[0] No function	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
21-14	Ext. 1 Feedback Source	[0] No function	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
21-15	Ext. 1 Setpoint	0.000 ExtPID1Unit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
21-17	Ext. 1 Reference [Unit]	0.000 ExtPID1Unit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
21-18	Ext. 1 Feedback [Unit]	0.000 ExtPID1Unit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
21-19	Ext. 1 Output [%]	0 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int32
21-2* Ext. CL 1 PID						
21-20	Ext. 1 Normal/Inverse Control	[0] Normal	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
21-21	Ext. 1 Proportional Gain	0.50 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
21-22	Ext. 1 Integral Time	20.00 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
21-23	Ext. 1 Differentation Time	0.00 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
21-24	Ext. 1 Dif. Gain Limit	5.0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
21-3* Ext. CL 2 Ref./Fb.						
21-30	Ext. 2 Ref./Feedback Unit	[0]	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
21-31	Ext. 2 Minimum Reference	0.000 ExtPID2Unit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
21-32	Ext. 2 Maximum Reference	100.000 ExtPID2Unit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
21-33	Ext. 2 Reference Source	[0] No function	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
21-34	Ext. 2 Feedback Source	[0] No function	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
21-35	Ext. 2 Setpoint	0.000 ExtPID2Unit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
21-37	Ext. 2 Reference [Unit]	0.000 ExtPID2Unit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
21-38	Ext. 2 Feedback [Unit]	0.000 ExtPID2Unit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
21-39	Ext. 2 Output [%]	0 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int32
21-4* Ext. CL 2 PID						
21-40	Ext. 2 Normal/Inverse Control	[0] Normal	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
21-41	Ext. 2 Proportional Gain	0.50 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
21-42	Ext. 2 Integral Time	20.00 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
21-43	Ext. 2 Differentation Time	0.00 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
21-44	Ext. 2 Dif. Gain Limit	5.0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
21-5* Ext. CL 3 Ref./Fb.						
21-50	Ext. 3 Ref./Feedback Unit	[0]	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
21-51	Ext. 3 Minimum Reference	0.000 ExtPID3Unit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
21-52	Ext. 3 Maximum Reference	100.000 ExtPID3Unit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
21-53	Ext. 3 Reference Source	[0] No function	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
21-54	Ext. 3 Feedback Source	[0] No function	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
21-55	Ext. 3 Setpoint	0.000 ExtPID3Unit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
21-57	Ext. 3 Reference [Unit]	0.000 ExtPID3Unit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
21-58	Ext. 3 Feedback [Unit]	0.000 ExtPID3Unit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
21-59	Ext. 3 Output [%]	0 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int32
21-6* Ext. CL 3 PID						
21-60	Ext. 3 Normal/Inverse Control	[0] Normal	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
21-61	Ext. 3 Proportional Gain	0.50 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
21-62	Ext. 3 Integral Time	20.00 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
21-63	Ext. 3 Differentation Time	0.00 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint16
21-64	Ext. 3 Dif. Gain Limit	5.0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16

5.3.19 Application Functions 22-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
22-0* Miscellaneous						
22-00	External Interlock Delay	0 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
22-2* No-Flow Detection						
22-20	Low Power Auto Set-up	[0] Off	All set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
22-21	Low Power Detection	[0] Disabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
22-22	Low Speed Detection	[0] Disabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
22-23	No-Flow Function	[0] Off	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
22-24	No-Flow Delay	10 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
22-26	Dry Pump Function	[0] Off	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
22-27	Dry Pump Delay	10 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
22-3* No-Flow Power Tuning						
22-30	No-Flow Power	0.00 kW	All set-ups	TRUE	1	Uint32
22-31	Power Correction Factor	100 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
22-32	Low Speed [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
22-33	Low Speed [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
22-34	Low Speed Power [kW]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	1	Uint32
22-35	Low Speed Power [HP]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
22-36	High Speed [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
22-37	High Speed [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
22-38	High Speed Power [kW]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	1	Uint32
22-39	High Speed Power [HP]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
22-4* Sleep Mode						
22-40	Minimum Run Time	60 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
22-41	Minimum Sleep Time	30 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
22-42	Wake-up Speed [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
22-43	Wake-up Speed [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
22-44	Wake-up Ref./FB Difference	10 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int8
22-45	Setpoint Boost	0 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int8
22-46	Maximum Boost Time	60 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
22-5* End of Curve						
22-50	End of Curve Function	[0] Off	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
22-51	End of Curve Delay	10 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
22-6* Broken Belt Detection						
22-60	Broken Belt Function	[0] Off	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
22-61	Broken Belt Torque	10 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
22-62	Broken Belt Delay	10 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
22-7* Short Cycle Protection						
22-75	Short Cycle Protection	[0] Disabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
22-76	Interval between Starts	start_to_start_min_on_time (P2277)	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
22-77	Minimum Run Time	0 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
22-8* Flow Compensation						
22-80	Flow Compensation	[0] Disabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
22-81	Square-linear Curve Approximation	100 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
22-82	Work Point Calculation	[0] Disabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
22-83	Speed at No-Flow [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
22-84	Speed at No-Flow [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
22-85	Speed at Design Point [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
22-86	Speed at Design Point [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
22-87	Pressure at No-Flow Speed	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
22-88	Pressure at Rated Speed	999999.999 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
22-89	Flow at Design Point	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
22-90	Flow at Rated Speed	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32

5.3.20 Timed Actions 23-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
23-0* Timed Actions						
23-00	ON Time	ExpressionLimit	2 set-ups	TRUE	0	TimeOfDay-WoDate
23-01	ON Action	[0] Disabled	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
23-02	OFF Time	ExpressionLimit	2 set-ups	TRUE	0	TimeOfDay-WoDate
23-03	OFF Action	[0] Disabled	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
23-04	Occurrence	[0] All days	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
23-1* Maintenance						
23-10	Maintenance Item	[1] Motor bearings	1 set-up	TRUE	-	Uint8
23-11	Maintenance Action	[1] Lubricate	1 set-up	TRUE	-	Uint8
23-12	Maintenance Time Base	[0] Disabled	1 set-up	TRUE	-	Uint8
23-13	Maintenance Time Interval	1 h	1 set-up	TRUE	74	Uint32
23-14	Maintenance Date and Time	ExpressionLimit	1 set-up	TRUE	0	TimeOfDay
23-1* Maintenance Reset						
23-15	Reset Maintenance Word	[0] Do not reset	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
23-16	Maintenance Text	0 N/A	1 set-up	TRUE	0	VisStr[20]
23-5* Energy Log						
23-50	Energy Log Resolution	[5] Last 24 Hours	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
23-51	Period Start	ExpressionLimit	2 set-ups	TRUE	0	TimeOfDay
23-53	Energy Log	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
23-54	Reset Energy Log	[0] Do not reset	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
23-6* Trending						
23-60	Trend Variable	[0] Power [kW]	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
23-61	Continuous Bin Data	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
23-62	Timed Bin Data	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
23-63	Timed Period Start	ExpressionLimit	2 set-ups	TRUE	0	TimeOfDay
23-64	Timed Period Stop	ExpressionLimit	2 set-ups	TRUE	0	TimeOfDay
23-65	Minimum Bin Value	ExpressionLimit	2 set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
23-66	Reset Continuous Bin Data	[0] Do not reset	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
23-67	Reset Timed Bin Data	[0] Do not reset	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
23-8* Payback Counter						
23-80	Power Reference Factor	100 %	2 set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
23-81	Energy Cost	1.00 N/A	2 set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
23-82	Investment	0 N/A	2 set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint32
23-83	Energy Savings	0 kWh	All set-ups	TRUE	75	Int32
23-84	Cost Savings	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Int32

5.3.21 Cascade Controller 25-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
25-0* System Settings						
25-00	Cascade Controller	null	2 set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
25-02	Motor Start	[0] Direct on Line	2 set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
25-04	Pump Cycling	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
25-05	Fixed Lead Pump	null	2 set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
25-06	Number of Pumps	2 N/A	2 set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint8
25-2* Bandwidth Settings						
25-20	Staging Bandwidth	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
25-21	Override Bandwidth	100 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
25-22	Fixed Speed Bandwidth	casco_staging_bandwidth (P2520)	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
25-23	SBW Staging Delay	15 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
25-24	SBW Destaging Delay	15 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
25-25	OBW Time	10 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
25-26	Destage At No-Flow	[0] Disabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
25-27	Stage Function	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
25-28	Stage Function Time	15 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
25-29	Destage Function	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
25-30	Destage Function Time	15 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
25-4* Staging Settings						
25-40	Ramp Down Delay	10.0 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
25-41	Ramp Up Delay	2.0 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
25-42	Staging Threshold	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
25-43	Destaging Threshold	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
25-44	Staging Speed [RPM]	0 RPM	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
25-45	Staging Speed [Hz]	0.0 Hz	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
25-46	Destaging Speed [RPM]	0 RPM	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
25-47	Destaging Speed [Hz]	0.0 Hz	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
25-5* Alternation Settings						
25-50	Lead Pump Alternation	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
25-51	Alternation Event	[0] External	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
25-52	Alternation Time Interval	24 h	All set-ups	TRUE	74	Uint16
25-53	Alternation Timer Value	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	VisStr[7]
25-54	Alternation Predefined Time	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	TimeOfDay-WoDate
25-55	Alternate if Load < 50%	[1] Enabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
25-56	Staging Mode at Alternation	[0] Slow	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
25-58	Run Next Pump Delay	0.1 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
25-59	Run on Mains Delay	0.5 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
25-8* Status						
25-80	Cascade Status	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	VisStr[25]
25-81	Pump Status	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	VisStr[25]
25-82	Lead Pump	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
25-83	Relay Status	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	VisStr[4]
25-84	Pump ON Time	0 h	All set-ups	TRUE	74	Uint32
25-85	Relay ON Time	0 h	All set-ups	TRUE	74	Uint32
25-86	Reset Relay Counters	[0] Do not reset	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
25-9* Service						
25-90	Pump Interlock	[0] Off	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
25-91	Manual Alternation	0 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8

5.3.22 Analog I/O Option MCB 109 26-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
26-0* Analog I/O Mode						
26-00	Terminal X42/1 Mode	[1] Voltage	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
26-01	Terminal X42/3 Mode	[1] Voltage	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
26-02	Terminal X42/5 Mode	[1] Voltage	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
26-1* Analog Input X42/1						
26-10	Terminal X42/1 Low Voltage	0.07 V	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
26-11	Terminal X42/1 High Voltage	10.00 V	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
26-14	Term. X42/1 Low Ref./Feedb. Value	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
26-15	Term. X42/1 High Ref./Feedb. Value	100.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
26-16	Term. X42/1 Filter Time Constant	0.001 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Uint16
26-17	Term. X42/1 Live Zero	[1] Enabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
26-2* Analog Input X42/3						
26-20	Terminal X42/3 Low Voltage	0.07 V	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
26-21	Terminal X42/3 High Voltage	10.00 V	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
26-24	Term. X42/3 Low Ref./Feedb. Value	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
26-25	Term. X42/3 High Ref./Feedb. Value	100.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
26-26	Term. X42/3 Filter Time Constant	0.001 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Uint16
26-27	Term. X42/3 Live Zero	[1] Enabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
26-3* Analog Input X42/5						
26-30	Terminal X42/5 Low Voltage	0.07 V	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
26-31	Terminal X42/5 High Voltage	10.00 V	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
26-34	Term. X42/5 Low Ref./Feedb. Value	0.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
26-35	Term. X42/5 High Ref./Feedb. Value	100.000 N/A	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
26-36	Term. X42/5 Filter Time Constant	0.001 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Uint16
26-37	Term. X42/5 Live Zero	[1] Enabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
26-4* Analog Out X42/7						
26-40	Terminal X42/7 Output	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
26-41	Terminal X42/7 Min. Scale	0.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
26-42	Terminal X42/7 Max. Scale	100.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
26-43	Terminal X42/7 Bus Control	0.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	N2
26-44	Terminal X42/7 Timeout Preset	0.00 %	1 set-up	TRUE	-2	Uint16
26-5* Analog Out X42/9						
26-50	Terminal X42/9 Output	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
26-51	Terminal X42/9 Min. Scale	0.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
26-52	Terminal X42/9 Max. Scale	100.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
26-53	Terminal X42/9 Bus Control	0.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	N2
26-54	Terminal X42/9 Timeout Preset	0.00 %	1 set-up	TRUE	-2	Uint16
26-6* Analog Out X42/11						
26-60	Terminal X42/11 Output	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
26-61	Terminal X42/11 Min. Scale	0.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
26-62	Terminal X42/11 Max. Scale	100.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Int16
26-63	Terminal X42/11 Bus Control	0.00 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	N2
26-64	Terminal X42/11 Timeout Preset	0.00 %	1 set-up	TRUE	-2	Uint16

5.3.23 Cascade CTL Option 27-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
27-0* Control & Status						
27-01	Pump Status	[0] Ready	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
27-02	Manual Pump Control	[0] No Operation	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
27-03	Current Runtime Hours	0 h	All set-ups	TRUE	74	Uint32
27-04	Pump Total Lifetime Hours	0 h	All set-ups	TRUE	74	Uint32
27-1* Configuration						
27-10	Cascade Controller	[0] Disabled	2 set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
27-11	Number Of Drives	1 N/A	2 set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint8
27-12	Number Of Pumps	ExpressionLimit	2 set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint8
27-14	Pump Capacity	100 %	2 set-ups	FALSE	0	Uint16
27-16	Runtime Balancing	[0] Balanced Priority 1	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
27-17	Motor Starters	[0] Direct Online	2 set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
27-18	Spin Time for Unused Pumps	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
27-19	Reset Current Runtime Hours	[0] Do not reset	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
27-2* Bandwidth Settings						
27-20	Normal Operating Range	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
27-21	Override Limit	100 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
27-22	Fixed Speed Only Operating Range	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
27-23	Staging Delay	15 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
27-24	Destaging Delay	15 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
27-25	Override Hold Time	10 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
27-27	Min Speed Destage Delay	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
27-3* Staging Speed						
27-31	Stage On Speed [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
27-32	Stage On Speed [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
27-33	Stage Off Speed [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
27-34	Stage Off Speed [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
27-4* Staging Settings						
27-40	Auto Tune Staging Settings	[1] Enabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
27-41	Ramp Down Delay	10.0 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
27-42	Ramp Up Delay	2.0 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
27-43	Staging Threshold	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
27-44	Destaging Threshold	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
27-45	Staging Speed [RPM]	0 RPM	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
27-46	Staging Speed [Hz]	0.0 Hz	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
27-47	Destaging Speed [RPM]	0 RPM	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
27-48	Destaging Speed [Hz]	0.0 Hz	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
27-5* Alternate Settings						
27-50	Automatic Alternation	[0] Disabled	All set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
27-51	Alternation Event	null	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
27-52	Alternation Time Interval	0 min	All set-ups	TRUE	70	Uint16
27-53	Alternation Timer Value	0 min	All set-ups	TRUE	70	Uint16
27-54	Alternation At Time of Day	[0] Disabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
27-55	Alternation Predefined Time	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	0	TimeOfDayWoDate
27-56	Alternate Capacity is <	0 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint8
27-58	Run Next Pump Delay	0.1 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
27-6* Digital Inputs						
27-60	Terminal X66/1 Digital Input	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
27-61	Terminal X66/3 Digital Input	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
27-62	Terminal X66/5 Digital Input	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
27-63	Terminal X66/7 Digital Input	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
27-64	Terminal X66/9 Digital Input	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
27-65	Terminal X66/11 Digital Input	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
27-66	Terminal X66/13 Digital Input	[0] No operation	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
27-7* Connections						
27-70	Relay	[0] Standard Relay	2 set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
27-9* Readouts						
27-91	Cascade Reference	0.0 %	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Int16
27-92	% Of Total Capacity	0 %	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
27-93	Cascade Option Status	[0] Disabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8

5.3.24 Water Application Functions 29-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
29-0* Pipe Fill						
29-00	Pipe Fill Enable	[0] Disabled	2 set-ups	FALSE	-	Uint8
29-01	Pipe Fill Speed [RPM]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	67	Uint16
29-02	Pipe Fill Speed [Hz]	ExpressionLimit	All set-ups	TRUE	-1	Uint16
29-03	Pipe Fill Time	0.00 s	All set-ups	TRUE	-2	Uint32
29-04	Pipe Fill Rate	0.001 ProcessCtrlUnit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32
29-05	Filled Setpoint	0.000 ProcessCtrlUnit	All set-ups	TRUE	-3	Int32

5.3.25 Bypass Option 31-**

Par. No. #	Parameter description	Default value	4-set-up	Change during operation	Conversion index	Type
31-00	Bypass Mode	[0] Drive	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
31-01	Bypass Start Time Delay	30 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
31-02	Bypass Trip Time Delay	0 s	All set-ups	TRUE	0	Uint16
31-03	Test Mode Activation	[0] Disabled	All set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8
31-10	Bypass Status Word	0 N/A	All set-ups	FALSE	0	V2
31-11	Bypass Running Hours	0 h	All set-ups	FALSE	74	Uint32
31-19	Remote Bypass Activation	[0] Disabled	2 set-ups	TRUE	-	Uint8

6 General Specifications

Mains supply (L1, L2, L3):	
Supply voltage	380-480 V ±10%
Supply voltage	525-690 V ±10%
Supply frequency	50/60 Hz
Max. imbalance temporary between mains phases	3.0 % of rated supply voltage
True Power Factor (λ)	≥ 0.9 nominal at rated load
Displacement Power Factor (cosφ) near unity	(> 0.98)
Switching on input supply L1, L2, L3 (power-ups)	maximum once/2 min.
Environment according to EN60664-1	overvoltage category III / pollution degree 2

The unit is suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 100.000 RMS symmetrical Amperes, 480/690 V maximum.

Motor output (U, V, W):	
Output voltage	0 - 100% of supply voltage
Output frequency	0 - 800* Hz
Switching on output	Unlimited
Ramp times	1 - 3600 sec.

* Voltage and power dependent

Torque characteristics:	
Starting torque (Constant torque)	maximum 110% for 1 min.*
Starting torque	maximum 135% up to 0.5 sec.*
Overload torque (Constant torque)	maximum 110% for 1 min.*

**Percentage relates to VLT AQUA Drive's nominal torque.*

Cable lengths and cross sections:	
Max. motor cable length, screened/armoured	VLT AQUA Drive: 150 m
Max. motor cable length, unscreened/unarmoured	VLT AQUA Drive: 300 m
Max. cross section to motor, mains, load sharing and brake *	
Maximum cross section to control terminals, rigid wire	1.5 mm^2/16 AWG (2 x 0.75 mm^2)
Maximum cross section to control terminals, flexible cable	1 mm^2/18 AWG
Maximum cross section to control terminals, cable with enclosed core	0.5 mm^2/20 AWG
Minimum cross section to control terminals	0.25 mm^2

** See Mains Supply tables for more information!*

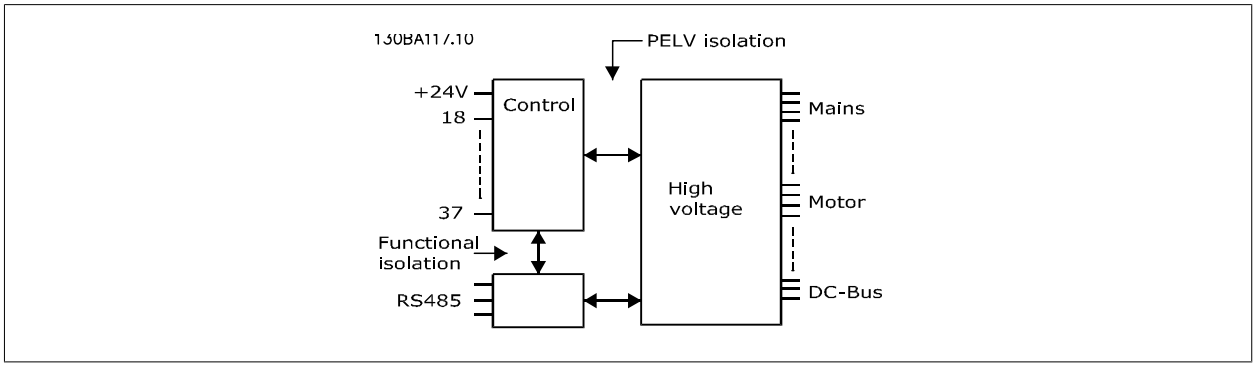
Digital inputs:	
Programmable digital inputs	4 (6)
Terminal number	18, 19, 27 [1)], 29, 32, 33,
Logic	PNP or NPN
Voltage level	0 - 24 V DC
Voltage level, logic'0' PNP	< 5 V DC
Voltage level, logic'1' PNP	> 10 V DC
Voltage level, logic '0' NPN	> 19 V DC
Voltage level, logic '1' NPN	< 14 V DC
Maximum voltage on input	28 V DC
Input resistance, R_i	approx. 4 kΩ

All digital inputs are galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.

1) Terminals 27 and 29 can also be programmed as output.

Analog inputs:	
Number of analog inputs	2
Terminal number	53, 54
Modes	Voltage or current
Mode select	Switch S201 and switch S202
Voltage mode	Switch S201/switch S202 = OFF (U)
Voltage level	: 0 to + 10 V (scaleable)
Input resistance, R_i	approx. 10 kΩ
Max. voltage	± 20 V
Current mode	Switch S201/switch S202 = ON (I)
Current level	0/4 to 20 mA (scaleable)
Input resistance, R_i	approx. 200 Ω
Max. current	30 mA
Resolution for analog inputs	10 bit (+ sign)
Accuracy of analog inputs	Max. error 0.5% of full scale
Bandwidth	: 200 Hz

The analog inputs are galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.



Pulse inputs:	
Programmable pulse inputs	2
Terminal number pulse	29, 33
Max. frequency at terminal, 29, 33	110 kHz (Push-pull driven)
Max. frequency at terminal, 29, 33	5 kHz (open collector)
Min. frequency at terminal 29, 33	4 Hz
Voltage level	see section on Digital input
Maximum voltage on input	28 V DC
Input resistance, R_i	approx. 4 kΩ
Pulse input accuracy (0.1 - 1 kHz)	Max. error: 0.1% of full scale

Analog output:	
Number of programmable analog outputs	1
Terminal number	42
Current range at analog output	0/4 - 20 mA
Max. resistor load to common at analog output	500 Ω
Accuracy on analog output	Max. error: 0.8 % of full scale
Resolution on analog output	8 bit

The analog output is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.

Control card, RS-485 serial communication:	
Terminal number	68 (P,TX+, RX+), 69 (N,TX-, RX-)
Terminal number 61	Common for terminals 68 and 69

The RS-485 serial communication circuit is functionally separated from other central circuits and galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV).

Digital output:	
Programmable digital/pulse outputs	2
Terminal number	27, 29 [1]
Voltage level at digital/frequency output	0 - 24 V
Max. output current (sink or source)	40 mA
Max. load at frequency output	1 kΩ
Max. capacitive load at frequency output	10 nF
Minimum output frequency at frequency output	0 Hz
Maximum output frequency at frequency output	32 kHz
Accuracy of frequency output	Max. error: 0.1 % of full scale
Resolution of frequency outputs	12 bit

1) Terminal 27 and 29 can also be programmed as input.

The digital output is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.

Control card, 24 V DC output:	
Terminal number	12, 13
Max. load	: 200 mA

The 24 V DC supply is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV), but has the same potential as the analog and digital inputs and outputs.

6

Relay outputs:	
Programmable relay outputs	2
Relay 01 Terminal number	1-3 (break), 1-2 (make)
Max. terminal load (AC-1)[1] on 1-3 (NC), 1-2 (NO) (Resistive load)	240 V AC, 2 A
Max. terminal load (AC-15)[1] (Inductive load @ cosφ 0.4)	240 V AC, 0.2 A
Max. terminal load (DC-1)[1] on 1-2 (NO), 1-3 (NC) (Resistive load)	60 V DC, 1A
Max. terminal load (DC-13)[1] (Inductive load)	24 V DC, 0.1A
Relay 02 Terminal number	4-6 (break), 4-5 (make)
Max. terminal load (AC-1)[1] on 4-5 (NO) (Resistive load)[2][3]	400 V AC, 2 A
Max. terminal load (AC-15)[1] on 4-5 (NO) (Inductive load @ cosφ 0.4)	240 V AC, 0.2 A
Max. terminal load (DC-1)[1] on 4-5 (NO) (Resistive load)	80 V DC, 2 A
Max. terminal load (DC-13)[1] on 4-5 (NO) (Inductive load)	24 V DC, 0.1A
Max. terminal load (AC-1)[1] on 4-6 (NC) (Resistive load)	240 V AC, 2 A
Max. terminal load (AC-15)[1] on 4-6 (NC) (Inductive load @ cosφ 0.4)	240 V AC, 0.2A
Max. terminal load (DC-1)[1] on 4-6 (NC) (Resistive load)	50 V DC, 2 A
Max. terminal load (DC-13)[1] on 4-6 (NC) (Inductive load)	24 V DC, 0.1 A
Min. terminal load on 1-3 (NC), 1-2 (NO), 4-6 (NC), 4-5 (NO)	24 V DC 10 mA, 24 V AC 20 mA
Environment according to EN 60664-1	overvoltage category III/pollution degree 2

1) IEC 60947 part 4 and 5

The relay contacts are galvanically isolated from the rest of the circuit by reinforced isolation (PELV).

2) Overvoltage Category II

3) UL applications 300 V AC 2A

Control card, 10 V DC output:	
Terminal number	50
Output voltage	10.5 V ±0.5 V
Max. load	25 mA

The 10 V DC supply is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.

Control characteristics:	
Resolution of output frequency at 0 - 1000 Hz	: +/- 0.003 Hz
System response time (terminals 18, 19, 27, 29, 32, 33)	: ≤ 2 ms
Speed control range (open loop)	1:100 of synchronous speed
Speed accuracy (open loop)	30 - 4000 rpm: Maximum error of ±8 rpm

All control characteristics are based on a 4-pole asynchronous motor

Surroundings:	
Enclosure, frame size D and E	IP 00, IP 21, IP 54
Enclosure, frame size F	IP 21, IP 54
Vibration test	0.7 g
Relative humidity	5% - 95%(IEC 721-3-3; Class 3K3 (non-condensing) during operation
Aggressive environment (IEC 721-3-3), uncoated	class 3C2
Aggressive environment (IEC 721-3-3), coated	class 3C3
Test method according to IEC 60068-2-43 H2S (10 days)	
Ambient temperature (at 60 AVM switching mode)	
- with derating	max. 55 ° C[1)]
- with full output power, typical EFF2 motors	max. 50 ° C[1)]
- at full continuous FC output current	max. 45 ° C[1)]

1) For more information on derating see the Design Guide, section on Special Conditions.

Minimum ambient temperature during full-scale operation	0 °C
Minimum ambient temperature at reduced performance	- 10 °C
Temperature during storage/transport	-25 - +65/70 °C
Maximum altitude above sea level without derating	1000 m
Maximum altitude above sea level with derating	3000 m

Derating for high altitude, see section on special conditions

EMC standards, Emission	EN 61800-3, EN 61000-6-3/4, EN 55011, IEC 61800-3
EMC standards, Immunity	EN 61800-3, EN 61000-6-1/2, EN 61000-4-2, EN 61000-4-3, EN 61000-4-4, EN 61000-4-5, EN 61000-4-6

See section on special conditions!

Control card performance:	
Scan interval	: 5 ms

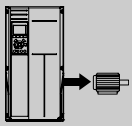
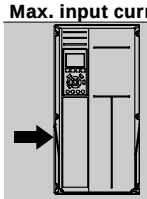
Control card, USB serial communication:	
USB standard	1.1 (Full speed)
USB plug	USB type B "device" plug

Connection to PC is carried out via a standard host/device USB cable.
The USB connection is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.
The USB connection is not galvanically isolated from protection earth. Use only isolated laptop/PC as connection to the USB connector on VLT AQUA Drive or an isolated USB cable/converter.

Protection and Features:

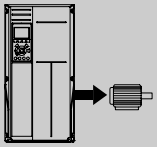
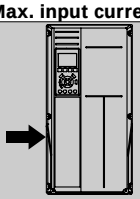
- Electronic thermal motor protection against overload.
- Temperature monitoring of the heatsink ensures that the frequency converter trips if the temperature reaches 95 °C ± 5°C. An overload temperature cannot be reset until the temperature of the heatsink is below 70 °C ± 5°C (Guideline - these temperatures may vary for different power sizes, enclosures etc.). VLT AQUA Drive has an auto derating function to avoid it's heatsink reaching 95 deg C.
- The frequency converter is protected against short-circuits on motor terminals U, V, W.
- If a mains phase is missing, the frequency converter trips or issues a warning (depending on the load).
- Monitoring of the intermediate circuit voltage ensures that the frequency converter trips if the intermediate circuit voltage is too low or too high.
- The frequency converter is protected against earth faults on motor terminals U, V, W.

Mains Supply 3 x 380 - 500 VAC

FC 302		P110	P132	P160	P200	P250
	Typical Shaft output at 400 V [kW]	110	132	160	200	250
	Typical Shaft output at 460 V [HP]	150	200	250	300	350
	Typical Shaft output at 500 V [kW]	132	160	200	250	315
	Enclosure IP21	D1	D1	D2	D2	D2
	Enclosure IP54	D1	D1	D2	D2	D2
	Enclosure IP00	D3	D3	D4	D4	D4
	Output current					
	Continuous (at 400 V) [A]	212	260	315	395	480
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 400 V) [A]	233	286	347	435	528
	Continuous (at 460/ 500 V) [A]	190	240	302	361	443
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 460/ 500 V) [A]	209	264	332	397	487
	Continuous KVA (at 400 V) [KVA]	147	180	218	274	333
	Continuous KVA (at 460 V) [KVA]	151	191	241	288	353
	Continuous KVA (at 500 V) [KVA]	165	208	262	313	384
Max. input current						
	Continuous (at 400 V) [A]	204	251	304	381	463
	Continuous (at 460/ 500 V) [A]	183	231	291	348	427
	Max. cable size, mains motor, brake and load share [mm^2 (AWG[2)])]	2 x 70 (2 x 2/0)	2 x 70 (2 x 2/0)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)
	Max. external pre-fuses [A] [1]	300	350	400	500	600
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)]	3234	3782	4213	5119	5893
	Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]	96	104	125	136	151
	Weight, enclosure IP00 [kg]	82	91	112	123	138
	Efficiency[4)]	0.98				
	Output frequency	0 - 800 Hz				
	Heatsink overtemp. trip	85 °C	90 °C	105 °C	105 °C	115 °C
	Power card ambient trip	60 °C				

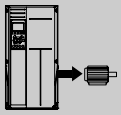
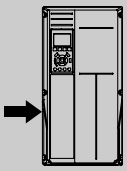
* High overload = 160% torque during 60 s, Normal overload = 110% torque during 60 s

Mains Supply 3 x 380 - 500 VAC

FC 302		P315	P355	P400	P450
	Typical Shaft output at 400 V [kW]	315	355	400	450
	Typical Shaft output at 460 V [HP]	450	500	600	600
	Typical Shaft output at 500 V [kW]	355	400	500	530
	Enclosure IP21	E1	E1	E1	E1
	EnclosureIP54	E1	E1	E1	E1
	Enclosure IP00	E2	E2	E2	E2
	Output current				
	Continuous (at 400 V) [A]	600	658	745	800
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 400 V) [A]	660	724	820	880
	Continuous (at 460/ 500 V) [A]	540	590	678	730
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 460/ 500 V) [A]	594	649	746	803
	Continuous KVA (at 400 V) [KVA]	416	456	516	554
	Continuous KVA (at 460 V) [KVA]	430	470	540	582
	Continuous KVA (at 500 V) [KVA]	468	511	587	632
Max. input current					
	Continuous (at 400 V) [A]	590	647	733	787
	Continuous (at 460/ 500 V) [A]	531	580	667	718
	Max. cable size, mains, motor and load share [mm^2 (AWG[2)])]	4x240 (4x500 mcm)	4x240 (4x500 mcm)	4x240 (4x500 mcm)	4x240 (4x500 mcm)
	Max. cable size, brake [mm^2 (AWG[2)])	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)
	Max. external pre-fuses [A] [1]	700	900	900	900
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)]	7630	7701	8879	9428
	Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]	263	270	272	313
	Weight, enclosure IP00 [kg]	221	234	236	277
	Efficiency[4)]	0.98			
	Output frequency	0 - 600 Hz			
	Heatsink overtemp. trip	95 °C			
	Power card ambient trip	68 °C			

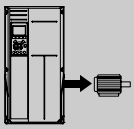
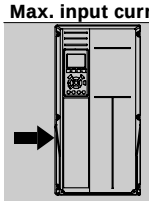
* High overload = 160% torque during 60 s, Normal overload = 110% torque during 60 s

Mains Supply 3 x 380 - 500 VAC

FC 302		P500	P560	P630	P710	P800	P1M0
	Typical Shaft output at 400 V [kW]	500	560	630	710	800	1000
	Typical Shaft output at 460 V [HP]	650	750	900	1000	1200	1350
	Typical Shaft output at 500 V [kW]	560	630	710	800	1000	1100
	Enclosure IP21, 54 without/ with options cabinet	F1/ F3	F1/ F3	F1/ F3	F1/ F3	F2/ F4	F2/ F4
	Output current						
	Continuous (at 400 V) [A]	880	990	1120	1260	1460	1720
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 400 V) [A]	968	1089	1232	1386	1606	1892
	Continuous (at 460/ 500 V) [A]	780	890	1050	1160	1380	1530
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 460/ 500 V) [A]	858	979	1155	1276	1518	1683
	Continuous KVA (at 400 V) [KVA]	610	686	776	873	1012	1192
	Continuous KVA (at 460 V) [KVA]	621	709	837	924	1100	1219
	Continuous KVA (at 500 V) [KVA]	675	771	909	1005	1195	1325
Max. input current							
	Continuous (at 400 V) [A]	857	964	1090	1227	1422	1675
	Continuous (at 460/ 500 V) [A]	759	867	1022	1129	1344	1490
	Max. cable size,motor [mm² (AWG[2)])]	8x150 (8x300 mcm)				12x150 (12x300 mcm)	
	Max. cable size,mains [mm² (AWG[2)])]	8x240 (8x500 mcm)					
	Max. cable size, loadsharing [mm² (AWG[2)])]	4x120 (4x250 mcm)					
	Max. cable size, brake [mm² (AWG[2)])	4x185 (4x350 mcm)				6x185 (6x350 mcm)	
	Max. external prefuses [A] [1]	1600		2000		2500	
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)]						
	Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]	1004/ 1299	1004/ 1299	1004/ 1299	1004/ 1299	1246/ 1541	1246/ 1541
	Weight Rectifier Module [kg]	102	102	102	102	136	136
	Weight Inverter Module [kg]	102	102	102	136	102	102
	Efficiency[4)]	0.98					
	Output frequency	0-600 Hz					
	Heatsink overtemp. trip	95 °C					
	Power card ambient trip	68 °C					

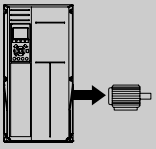
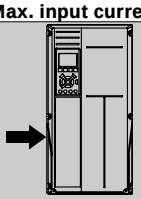
* High overload = 160% torque during 60 s, Normal overload = 110% torque during 60 s

Mains Supply 3 x 525- 690 VAC

FC 302		P45K	P55K	P75K	P90K	P110
	Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW]	37	45	55	75	90
	Typical Shaft output at 575 V [HP]	50	60	75	100	125
	Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW]	45	55	75	90	110
	Enclosure IP21	D1	D1	D1	D1	D1
	Enclosure IP54	D1	D1	D1	D1	D1
	Enclosure IP00	D2	D2	D2	D2	D2
Output current						
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	56	76	90	113	137
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 550 V) [A]	62	84	99	124	151
	Continuous (at 575/ 690 V) [A]	54	73	86	108	131
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 575/ 690 V) [A]	59	80	95	119	144
	Continuous KVA (at 550 V) [KVA]	53	72	86	108	131
	Continuous KVA (at 575 V) [KVA]	54	73	86	108	130
	Continuous KVA (at 690 V) [KVA]	65	87	103	129	157
Max. input current						
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	60	77	89	110	130
	Continuous (at 575 V) [A]	58	74	85	106	124
	Continuous (at 690 V) [A]	58	77	87	109	128
	Max. cable size, mains, motor, load share and brake [mm^2 (AWG)]	2x70 (2x2/0)				
	Max. external pre-fuses [A] [1]	125	160	200	200	250
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4]	1458	1717	1913	2262	2662
	Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]	96				
	Weight, enclosure IP00 [kg]	82				
	Efficiency[4]	0.97	0.97	0.98	0.98	0.98
	Output frequency	0 - 600 Hz				
	Heatsink overtemp. trip	85 °C				
	Power card ambient trip	60 °C				

* High overload = 160% torque during 60 s, Normal overload = 110% torque during 60 s

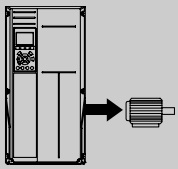
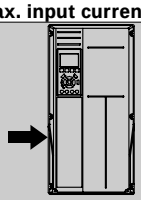
Mains Supply 3 x 525- 690 VAC

FC 302		P132	P160	P200	P250
	Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW]	110	132	160	200
	Typical Shaft output at 575 V [HP]	150	200	250	300
	Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW]	132	160	200	250
	Enclosure IP21	D1	D1	D2	D2
	Enclosure IP54	D1	D1	D2	D2
	Enclosure IP00	D3	D3	D4	D4
	Output current				
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	162	201	253	303
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 550 V) [A]	178	221	278	333
	Continuous (at 575/ 690 V) [A]	155	192	242	290
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 575/ 690 V) [A]	171	211	266	319
	Continuous KVA (at 550 V) [KVA]	154	191	241	289
	Continuous KVA (at 575 V) [KVA]	154	191	241	289
	Continuous KVA (at 690 V) [KVA]	185	229	289	347
Max. input current					
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	158	198	245	299
	Continuous (at 575 V) [A]	151	189	234	286
	Continuous (at 690 V) [A]	155	197	240	296
	Max. cable size, mains motor, load share and brake [mm^2 (AWG)]	2 x 70 (2 x 2/0)	2 x 70 (2 x 2/0)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)
	Max. external pre-fuses [A] [1]	315	350	350	400
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)]	3114	3612	4292	5156
e	Weight, Enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]	96	104	125	136
	Weight, Enclosure IP00 [kg]	82	91	112	123
	Efficiency[4)]	0.98			
	Output frequency	0 - 600 Hz			
	Heatsink overtemp. trip	85 °C	90 °C	110 °C	110 °C
	Power card ambient trip	60 °C			

* High overload = 160% torque during 60 s, Normal overload = 110% torque during 60 s

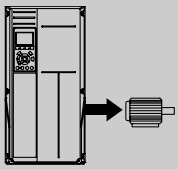
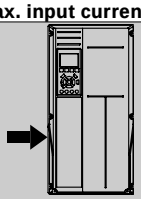
6

Mains Supply 3 x 525- 690 VAC

FC 302		P315	P400	P450
	Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW]	250	315	355
	Typical Shaft output at 575 V [HP]	350	400	450
	Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW]	315	400	450
	Enclosure IP21	D2	D2	E1
	Enclosure IP54	D2	D2	E1
	Enclosure IP00	D4	D4	E2
	Output current			
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	360	418	470
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 550 V) [A]	396	460	517
	Continuous (at 575/ 690 V) [A]	344	400	450
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 575/ 690 V) [A]	378	440	495
	Continuous KVA (at 550 V) [KVA]	343	398	448
	Continuous KVA (at 575 V) [KVA]	343	398	448
	Continuous KVA (at 690 V) [KVA]	411	478	538
Max. input current				
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	355	408	453
	Continuous (at 575 V) [A]	339	390	434
	Continuous (at 690 V) [A]	352	400	434
	Max. cable size, mains, motor and load share [mm^2 (AWG)]	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)	4 x 240 (4 x 500 mcm)
	Max. cable size, brake [mm^2 (AWG)]	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)
	Max. external pre-fuses [A] [1]	500	550	700
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)]	5821	6149	6449
	Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]	151	165	263
	Weight, enclosure IP00 [kg]	138	151	221
	Efficiency[4)]		0.98	
	Output frequency	0 - 600 Hz	0 - 500 Hz	0 - 500 Hz
	Heatsink overtemp. trip	110 °C	110 °C	85 °C
	Power card ambient trip	60 °C	60 °C	68 °C

* High overload = 160% torque during 60 s, Normal overload = 110% torque during 60 s

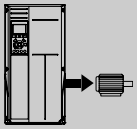
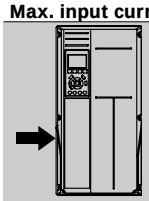
Mains Supply 3 x 525- 690 VAC

FC 302		P500	P560	P630
	Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW]	400	450	500
	Typical Shaft output at 575 V [HP]	500	600	650
	Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW]	500	560	630
	Enclosure IP21	E1	E1	E1
	Enclosure IP54	E1	E1	E1
	Enclosure IP00	E2	E2	E2
	Output current			
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	523	596	630
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 550 V) [A]	575	656	693
	Continuous (at 575/ 690 V) [A]	500	570	630
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 575/ 690 V) [A]	550	627	693
	Continuous KVA (at 550 V) [KVA]	498	568	600
	Continuous KVA (at 575 V) [KVA]	498	568	627
	Continuous KVA (at 690 V) [KVA]	598	681	753
Max. input current				
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	504	574	607
	Continuous (at 575 V) [A]	482	549	607
	Continuous (at 690 V) [A]	482	549	607
	Max. cable size, mains, motor and load share [mm^2 (AWG)]	4x240 (4x500 mcm)	4x240 (4x500 mcm)	4x240 (4x500 mcm)
	Max. cable size, brake [mm^2 (AWG)]	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)
	Max. external pre-fuses [A] [1]	700	900	900
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)]	7249	8727	9673
	Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]	263	272	313
	Weight, enclosure IP00 [kg]	221	236	277
	Efficiency[4)]	0.98		
	Output frequency	0 - 500 Hz		
	Heatsink overtemp. trip	85 °C		
	Power card ambient trip	68 °C		

* High overload = 160% torque during 60 s, Normal overload = 110% torque during 60 s

6

Mains Supply 3 x 525- 690 VAC

FC 302		P710	P800	P900	P1M0	P1M2
	Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW]	560	670	750	850	1000
	Typical Shaft output at 575 V [HP]	750	950	1050	1150	1350
	Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW]	710	800	900	1000	1200
	Enclosure IP21, 54 without/ with options cabinet	F1/ F3	F1/ F3	F1/ F3	F2/ F4	F2/ F4
	Output current					
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	763	889	988	1108	1317
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 550 V) [A]	839	978	1087	1219	1449
	Continuous (at 575/ 690 V) [A]	730	850	945	1060	1260
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 575/ 690 V) [A]	803	935	1040	1166	1386
	Continuous KVA (at 550 V) [KVA]	727	847	941	1056	1255
	Continuous KVA (at 575 V) [KVA]	727	847	941	1056	1255
	Continuous KVA (at 690 V) [KVA]	872	1016	1129	1267	1506
Max. input current						
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	743	866	962	1079	1282
	Continuous (at 575 V) [A]	711	828	920	1032	1227
	Continuous (at 690 V) [A]	711	828	920	1032	1227
	Max. cable size,motor [mm² (AWG[2])]		8x150 (8x300 mcm)		12x150 (12x300 mcm)	
	Max. cable size,mains [mm² (AWG[2])]			8x240 (8x500 mcm)		
	Max. cable size, load-sharing [mm² (AWG[2])]			4x120 (4x250 mcm)		
	Max. cable size, brake [mm² (AWG[2])]		4x185 (4x350 mcm)		6x185 (6x350 mcm)	
	Max. external pre-fuses [A] [1]		1600			2000
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4]					
	Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]	1004/ 1299	1004/ 1299	1004/ 1299	1246/ 1541	1246/ 1541
	Weight, Rectifier Module [kg]	102	102	102	136	136
	Weight, Inverter Module [kg]	102	102	136	102	102
	Efficiency[4]			0.98		
	Output frequency			0-500 Hz		
	Heatsink overtemp. trip			85 °C		
	Power card ambient trip			68 °C		
* High overload = 160% torque during 60 s, Normal overload = 110% torque during 60 s						

1) For type of fuse see section *Fuses.*

2) American Wire Gauge.

3) Measured using 5 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.

4) The typical power loss is at nominal load conditions and expected to be within +/-15% (tolerence relates to variety in voltage and cable conditions).

Values are based on a typical motor efficiency (eff2/eff3 border line). Motors with lower efficiency will also add to the power loss in the frequency converter and opposite.

If the switching frequency is increased compared to the default setting, the power losses may rise significantly.

LCPLCP and typical control card power consumptions are included. Further options and customer load may add up to 30W to the losses. (Though typical only 4W extra for a fully loaded control card, or options for slot A or slot B, each).

Although measurements are made with state of the art equipment, some measurement inaccuracy must be allowed for (+/-5%).

7 Troubleshooting

7.1 Alarms and warnings

A warning or an alarm is signalled by the relevant LED on the front of the frequency converter and indicated by a code on the display.

A warning remains active until its cause is no longer present. Under certain circumstances operation of the motor may still be continued. Warning messages may be critical, but are not necessarily so.

In the event of an alarm, the frequency converter will have tripped. Alarms must be reset to restart operation once their cause has been rectified.

This may be done in four ways:

1. By using the [RESET] control button on the LCP control panel.
2. Via a digital input with the "Reset" function.
3. Via serial communication/optional fieldbus.
4. By resetting automatically using the [Auto Reset] function, which is a default setting for VLT AQUA Drive. see par. 14-20 Reset Mode in **VLT AQUA Drive Programming Guide**

NB!
After a manual reset using the [RESET] button on the LCP, the [AUTO ON] or [HAND ON] button must be pressed to restart the motor.

If an alarm cannot be reset, the reason may be that its cause has not been rectified, or the alarm is trip-locked (see also table on following page).

Alarms that are trip-locked offer additional protection, means that the mains supply must be switched off before the alarm can be reset. After being switched back on, the frequency converter is no longer blocked and may be reset as described above once the cause has been rectified.

Alarms that are not trip-locked can also be reset using the automatic reset function in parameter 14-20 (Warning: automatic wake-up is possible!)

If a warning and alarm is marked against a code in the table on the following page, this means that either a warning occurs before an alarm, or it can be specified whether it is a warning or an alarm that is to be displayed for a given fault.

This is possible, for instance, in parameter 1-90 *Motor Thermal Protection.* After an alarm or trip, the motor carries on coasting, and the alarm and warning flash on the frequency converter. Once the problem has been rectified, only the alarm continues flashing.

No.	Description	Warning	Alarm/Trip	Alarm/Trip Lock	Parameter Reference
1	10 Volts low	X			
2	Live zero error	(X)	(X)		6-01
3	No motor	(X)			1-80
4	Mains phase loss	(X)	(X)	(X)	14-12
5	DC link voltage high	X			
6	DC link voltage low	X			
7	DC over voltage	X	X		
8	DC under voltage	X	X		
9	Inverter overloaded	X	X		
10	Motor ETR over temperature	(X)	(X)		1-90
11	Motor thermistor over temperature	(X)	(X)		1-90
12	Torque limit	X	X		
13	Over Current	X	X	X	
14	Earth fault	X	X	X	
15	Hardware mismatch		X	X	
16	Short Circuit		X	X	
17	Control word timeout	(X)	(X)		8-04
23	Internal Fan Fault	X			
24	External Fan Fault	X			14-53
25	Brake resistor short-circuited	X			
26	Brake resistor power limit	(X)	(X)		2-13
27	Brake chopper short-circuited	X	X		
28	Brake check	(X)	(X)		2-15
29	Heatsink overtemp	X	X	X	
30	Motor phase U missing	(X)	(X)	(X)	4-58
31	Motor phase V missing	(X)	(X)	(X)	4-58
32	Motor phase W missing	(X)	(X)	(X)	4-58
33	Inrush fault		X	X	
34	Fieldbus communication fault	X	X		
36	Mains failure	X	X		
38	Internal fault		X	X	
39	Heatsink sensor		X	X	
40	Overload of Digital Output Terminal 27	(X)			5-00, 5-01
41	Overload of Digital Output Terminal 29	(X)			5-00, 5-02
42	Overload of Digital Output On X30/6	(X)			5-32
42	Overload of Digital Output On X30/7	(X)			5-33
46	Pwr. card supply		X	X	
47	24 V supply low	X	X	X	
48	1.8 V supply low		X	X	
49	Speed limit	X			
50	AMA calibration failed		X		
51	AMA check U_{nom} and I_{nom}		X		
52	AMA low I_{nom}		X		
53	AMA motor too big		X		
54	AMA motor too small		X		
55	AMA parameter out of range		X		
56	AMA interrupted by user		X		
57	AMA timeout		X		
58	AMA internal fault	X	X		
59	Current limit	X			
61	Tracking Error	(X)	(X)		4-30
62	Output Frequency at Maximum Limit	X			
64	Voltage Limit	X			
65	Control Board Over-temperature	X	X	X	
66	Heat sink Temperature Low	X			
67	Option Configuration has Changed		X		
68	Safe Stop Activated		X[1)]		
69	Pwr. Card Temp		X	X	
70	Illegal FC configuration			X	
71	PTC 1 Safe Stop	X	X[1)]		
72	Dangerous Failure			X[1)]	
73	Safe Stop Auto Restart				
77	Reduced power mode	X			
79	Illegal PS config		X	X	
80	Drive Initialised to Default Value		X		
85	Profibus/Profisafe Error				
91	Analog input 54 wrong settings			X	
92	NoFlow	X	X		22-2*
93	Dry Pump	X	X		22-2*
94	End of Curve	X	X		22-5*
95	Broken Belt	X	X		22-6*
96	Start Delayed	X			22-7*
97	Stop Delayed	X			22-7*
98	Clock Fault	X			0-7*

Table 7.1: Alarm/Warning code list

No.	Description	Warning	Alarm/Trip	Alarm/Trip Lock	Parameter Reference
243	Brake IGBT	X	X		
244	Heatsink temp	X	X	X	
245	Heatsink sensor		X	X	
246	Pwr.card supply		X	X	
247	Pwr.card temp		X	X	
248	Illegal PS config		X	X	
250	New spare part			X	
251	New Type Code		X	X	

Table 7.2: Alarm/Warning code list

(X) Dependent on parameter

1) Can not be Auto reset via par. 14-20 Reset *Mode*

A trip is the action when an alarm has appeared. The trip will coast the motor and can be reset by pressing the reset button or make a reset by a digital input (Par. 5-1* [1]). The origin event that caused an alarm cannot damage the frequency converter or cause dangerous conditions. A trip lock is an action when an alarm occurs, which may cause damage to frequency converter or connected parts. A Trip Lock situation can only be reset by a power cycling.

LED indication	
Warning	yellow
Alarm	flashing red
Trip locked	yellow and red

Alarm Word and Extended Status Word

Bit	Hex	Dec	Alarm Word	Warning Word	Extended Status Word
0	00000001	1	Brake Check	Brake Check	Ramping
1	00000002	2	Pwr. Card Temp	Pwr. Card Temp	AMA Running
2	00000004	4	Earth Fault	Earth Fault	Start CW/CCW
3	00000008	8	Ctrl.Card Temp	Ctrl.Card Temp	Slow Down
4	00000010	16	Ctrl. Word TO	Ctrl. Word TO	Catch Up
5	00000020	32	Over Current	Over Current	Feedback High
6	00000040	64	Torque Limit	Torque Limit	Feedback Low
7	00000080	128	Motor Th Over	Motor Th Over	Output Current High
8	00000100	256	Motor ETR Over	Motor ETR Over	Output Current Low
9	00000200	512	Inverter Overld.	Inverter Overld.	Output Freq High
10	00000400	1024	DC under Volt	DC under Volt	Output Freq Low
11	00000800	2048	DC over Volt	DC over Volt	Brake Check OK
12	00001000	4096	Short Circuit	DC Voltage Low	Braking Max
13	00002000	8192	Inrush Fault	DC Voltage High	Braking
14	00004000	16384	Mains ph. Loss	Mains ph. Loss	Out of Speed Range
15	00008000	32768	AMA Not OK	No Motor	OVC Active
16	00010000	65536	Live Zero Error	Live Zero Error	
17	00020000	131072	Internal Fault	10V Low	
18	00040000	262144	Brake Overload	Brake Overload	
19	00080000	524288	U phase Loss	Brake Resistor	
20	00100000	1048576	V phase Loss	Brake IGBT	
21	00200000	2097152	W phase Loss	Speed Limit	
22	00400000	4194304	Fieldbus Fault	Fieldbus Fault	
23	00800000	8388608	24 V Supply Low	24V Supply Low	
24	01000000	16777216	Mains Failure	Mains Failure	
25	02000000	33554432	1.8V Supply Low	Current Limit	
26	04000000	67108864	Brake Resistor	Low Temp	
27	08000000	134217728	Brake IGBT	Voltage Limit	
28	10000000	268435456	Option Change	Unused	
29	20000000	536870912	Drive Initialised	Unused	
30	40000000	1073741824	Safe Stop	Unused	

Table 7.3: Description of Alarm Word, Warning Word and Extended Status Word

The alarm words, warning words and extended status words can be read out via serial bus or optional fieldbus for diagnosis. See also par. 16-90, 16-92 and 16-94.

7.1.1 Fault messages

WARNING 1, 10 Volts low:
The 10 V voltage from terminal 50 on the control card is below 10 V. Remove some of the load from terminal 50, as the 10 V supply is overloaded. Max. 15 mA or minimum 590 Ω.

WARNING/ALARM 2, Live zero error:
The signal on terminal 53 or 54 is less than 50% of the value set in par. 6-10 *Terminal 53 Low Voltage*, par. 6-12 Terminal *53 Low Current*, par. 6-20 *Terminal 54 Low Voltage*, or par. 6-22 Terminal *54 Low Current* respectively.

WARNING/ALARM 3, No motor:
No motor has been connected to the output of the frequency converter.

WARNING/ALARM 4, Mains phase loss:
A phase is missing on the supply side, or the mains voltage imbalance is too high.
This message also appears in case of a fault in the input rectifier on the frequency converter.
Check the supply voltage and supply currents to the frequency converter.

7

WARNING 5, DC link voltage high:
The intermediate circuit voltage (DC) is higher than the over-voltage limit of the control system. The frequency converter is still active.

WARNING 6, DC link voltage low:
The intermediate circuit voltage (DC) is below the undervoltage limit of the control system. The frequency converter is still active.

WARNING/ALARM 7, DC over voltage:
If the intermediate circuit voltage exceeds the limit, the frequency converter trips after a time.

Possible corrections:

Select **O**ver **V**oltage **C**ontrol function in par. 2-17 Over-voltage *Control*

Connect a brake resistor

Extend the ramp time

Activate functions in par. 2-10 Brake *Function*

Increase par. 14-26 Trip *Delay at Inverter Fault*

Selecting OVC function will extend the ramp times.

Alarm/warning limits:

Frequency converter:	3 x 380 - 500 V [VDC]	3 x 525 - 690 V [VDC]
Under-voltage	402	553
Voltage warning low	423	585
Voltage warning high (w/o brake - w/brake)	817/828	1084/1109
Over-voltage	855	1130

The voltages stated are the intermediate circuit voltage of the frequency converter with a tolerance of ± 5 %. The corresponding mains voltage is the intermediate circuit voltage (DC-link) divided by 1.35

WARNING/ALARM 8, DC under voltage:
If the intermediate circuit voltage (DC) drops below the "voltage warning low" limit (see table above), the frequency converter checks if 24 V backup supply is connected.
If no 24 V backup supply is connected, the frequency converter trips after a given time depending on the unit.
To check whether the supply voltage matches the frequency converter, see *3.1 General Specifications*.

WARNING/ALARM 9, Inverter overloaded:
The frequency converter is about to cut out because of an overload (too high current for too long). The counter for electronic, thermal inverter protection gives a warning at 98% and trips at 100%, while giving an alarm. You cannot reset the frequency converter until the counter is below 90%.
The fault is that the frequency converter is overloaded by more than nominal current for too long.

WARNING/ALARM 10, Motor ETR over temperature:
According to the electronic thermal protection (ETR), the motor is too hot. You can choose if you want the frequency converter to give a warning or an alarm when the counter reaches 100% in par. 1-90 Motor *Thermal Protection*. The fault is that the motor is overloaded by more than nominal current for too long. Check that the motor par. 1-24 *Motor Current* is set correctly.

WARNING/ALARM 11, Motor thermistor over temp:
The thermistor or the thermistor connection is disconnected. You can choose if you want the frequency converter to give a warning or an alarm in par. 1-90 Motor *Thermal Protection*. Check that the thermistor is connected correctly between terminal 53 or 54 (analog voltage input) and terminal 50 (+ 10 Volts supply), or between terminal 18 or 19 (digital input PNP only) and terminal 50. If a KTY sensor is used, check for correct connection between terminal 54 and 55.

WARNING/ALARM 12, Torque limit:
The torque is higher than the value in par. 4-16 Torque *Limit Motor Mode* (in motor operation) or the torque is higher than the value in par. 4-17 Torque *Limit Generator Mode* (in regenerative operation).

WARNING/ALARM 13, Over Current:
The inverter peak current limit (approx. 200% of the rated current) is exceeded. The warning will last approx. 8-12 sec., then the frequency converter trips and issues an alarm. Turn off the frequency converter and check if the motor shaft can be turned and if the motor size matches the frequency converter.

ALARM 14, Earth fault:
There is a discharge from the output phases to earth, either in the cable between the frequency converter and the motor or in the motor itself.
Turn off the frequency converter and remove the earth fault.

ALARM 15, In-complete hardware:
A fitted option is not handled by the present control board (hardware or software).

ALARM 16, Short-circuit:
There is short-circuiting in the motor or on the motor terminals.
Turn off the frequency converter and remove the short-circuit.

WARNING/ALARM 17, Control word timeout:
There is no communication to the frequency converter.
The warning will only be active when par. 8-04 Control *Timeout Function* is NOT set to *OFF*.
If par. 8-04 Control *Timeout Function* is set to *Stop* and *Trip*, a warning appears and the frequency converter ramps down to zero speed, while giving an alarm.
par. 8-03 Control *Timeout Time* could possibly be increased.

WARNING 23, Internal fans:
External fans have failed due to defect hardware or fans not mounted.

WARNING 24, External fan fault:
The fan warning function is an extra protection function that checks if the fan is running / mounted. The fan warning can be disabled in par. 14-53 Fan *Monitor*, [0] Disabled.

WARNING 25, Brake resistor short-circuited:
The brake resistor is monitored during operation. If it short-circuits, the brake function is disconnected and the warning appears. The frequency converter still works, but without the brake function. Turn off the frequency converter and replace the brake resistor (see par. 2-15 Brake *Check*).

ALARM/WARNING 26, Brake resistor power limit:
The power transmitted to the brake resistor is calculated as a percentage, as a mean value over the last 120 s, on the basis of the resistance value of the brake resistor (par. 2-11 Brake *Resistor (ohm)*) and the intermediate circuit voltage. The warning is active when the dissipated braking power is higher than 90%. If *Trip* [2] has been selected in par. 2-13 Brake *Power Monitoring*, the frequency converter cuts out and issues this alarm, when the dissipated braking power is higher than 100%.

WARNING/ALARM 27, Brake chopper fault:
The brake transistor is monitored during operation and if it short-circuits, the brake function disconnects and the warning comes up. The frequency converter is still able to run, but since the brake transistor has short-circuited, substantial power is transmitted to the brake resistor, even if it is inactive.
Turn off the frequency converter and remove the brake resistor.
This alarm/ warning could also occur should the brake resistor overheat. Terminal 104 to 106 are available as brake resistor. Klixon inputs, see section Brake Resistor Temperature Switch.

Warning: There is a risk of substantial power being transmitted to the brake resistor if the brake transistor is short-circuited.

ALARM/WARNING 28, Brake check failed:
Brake resistor fault: the brake resistor is not connected/working.

WARNING/ALARM 29, Heatsink temp:
The maximum temperature of the heatsink has been exceeded. The temperature fault will not be reset until the temperature falls below a defined heatsink temperature. The trip and reset point are different based on the drive power size.

The fault could be:

- Ambient temperature too high
- Too long motor cable

ALARM 30, Motor phase U missing:
Motor phase U between the frequency converter and the motor is missing.
Turn off the frequency converter and check motor phase U.

ALARM 31, Motor phase V missing:
Motor phase V between the frequency converter and the motor is missing.
Turn off the frequency converter and check motor phase V.

ALARM 32, Motor phase W missing:
Motor phase W between the frequency converter and the motor is missing.
Turn off the frequency converter and check motor phase W.

ALARM 33, Inrush fault:
Too many powerups have occured within a short time period. See the chapter *General Specifications* for the allowed number of power-ups within one minute.

WARNING/ALARM 34, Fieldbus communication fault:
The fieldbus on the communication option card is not working.

WARNING/ALARM 36, Mains failure:
This warning/alarm is only active if the supply voltage to the frequency converter is lost and parameter 14-10 is NOT set to OFF. Possible correction: check the fuses to the frequency converter

WARNING/ALARM 37, Phase Imbalance:
There is a current imbalance between the power units.

ALARM 38, Internal fault:
By this alarm it may be necessary to contact your DanfossDanfossDanfoss supplier. Some typical alarm messages:

0	The serial port cannot be initialized. Serious hardware failure
256	The power EEPROM data is defect or too old
512	The control board EEPROM data is defect or too old
513	Communication time out Reading EEPROM data
514	Communication time out Reading EEPROM data
515	The Application Orientated Control cannot recognize the EEPROM data
516	Cannot write to the EEPROM because a write command is on progress
517	The write command is under time out
518	Failure in the EEPROM
519	Missing or invalid Barcode data in EEPROM 1024 – 1279 CAN telegram cannot be sent. (1027 indicate a possible hardware failure)
1281	Digital Signal Processor flash time-out
1282	Power micro software version mismatch
1283	Power EEPROM data version mismatch
1284	Cannot read Digital Signal Processor software version
1299	Option SW in slot A is too old
1300	Option SW in slot B is too old
1301	Option SW in slot C0 is too old
1302	Option SW in slot C1 is too old
1315	Option SW in slot A is not supported (not allowed)
1316	Option SW in slot B is not supported (not allowed)
1317	Option SW in slot C0 is not supported (not allowed)
1318	Option SW in slot C1 is not supported (not allowed)
1536	An exception in the Application Orientated Control is registered. Debug information written in LCPLCP
1792	DSP watchdog is active. Debugging of power part data Motor Orientated Control data not transferred correctly

2049	Power data restarted
2315	Missing SW version from power unit
2324	The power card configuration is determined to be incorrect at power up
2325	A power card has stopped communicating while main power is applied
2326	The power card configuration is determined to be incorrect after the delay for power cards to register
2327	Too many power card locations have been registered as present
2330	The power size information between the power cards does not match
2816	Stack overflow Control board module
2817	Scheduler slow tasks
2818	Fast tasks
2819	Parameter thread
2820	LCP stack overflow
2821	Serial port overflow
2822	USB port overflow
3072-5122	Parameter value is outside its limits. Perform a initialization. Parameter number causing the alarm: Subtract the code from 3072. Ex Error code 3238: 3238-3072 = 166 is outside the limit
5123	Option in slot A: Hardware incompatible with Control board hardware
5124	Option in slot B: Hardware incompatible with Control board hardware
5125	Option in slot C0: Hardware incompatible with Control board hardware
5126	Option in slot C1: Hardware incompatible with Control board hardware
5376-6231	Out of memory

ALARM 39, Heatsink sensor:
No feedback from the heatsink sensor.

WARNING 40, Overload of Digital Output Terminal 27
Check the load connected to terminal 27 or remove short-circuit connection. Check parameters 5-00 and 5-01.

WARNING 41, Overload of Digital Output Terminal 29:
Check the load connected to terminal 29 or remove short-circuit connection. Check parameters 5-00 and 5-02.

WARNING 42, Overload of Digital Output On X30/6 :
Check the load connected to X30/6 or remove short-circuit connection. Check parameter 5-32.

WARNING 42, Overload of Digital Output On X30/7 :
Check the load connected to X30/7 or remove short-circuit connection. Check parameter 5-33.

ALARM 46, Pwr. card supply:
The supply on the power card is out of range.

WARNING 47, 24 V supply low:
The external 24 V DC backup power supply may be overloaded, otherwise contact your DanfossDanfossDanfoss supplier.

ALARM 48, 1.8 V supply low:
Contact your DanfossDanfossDanfoss supplier.

WARNING 49, Speed limit:
The speed has been limited by range in par. 4-11 *Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]* and par. 4-13 *Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]*.

ALARM 50, AMA calibration failed:
Contact your DanfossDanfossDanfoss supplier.

ALARM 51, AMA check Unom and Inom:
The setting of motor voltage, motor current, and motor power is presumably wrong. Check the settings.

ALARM 52, AMA low Inom:
The motor current is too low. Check the settings.

ALARM 53, AMA motor too big:
The motor is too big for the AMA to be carried out.

ALARM 54, AMA motor too small:
The motor is too small for the AMA to be carried out.

ALARM 55, AMA par. out of range:
The par. values found from the motor are outside acceptable range.

ALARM 56, AMA interrupted by user:
The AMA has been interrupted by the user.

ALARM 57, AMA timeout:
Try to start the AMA again a number of times, until the AMA is carried out. Please note that repeated runs may heat the motor to a level where the resistance Rs and Rr are increased. In most cases, however, this is not critical.

WARNING/ALARM 58, AMA internal fault:
Contact your DanfossDanfossDanfoss supplier.

WARNING 59, Current limit:
The current is higher than the value in par. 4-18 Current *Limit*.

WARNING 60, External Interlock:
External Interlock has been activated. To resume normal operation, apply 24 VDC to the terminal programmed for External Interlock and reset the frequency converter (via Bus, Digital I/O or by pressing [Reset]).

WARNING/ALARM 61, Tracking Error:
Tracking error. Contact your supplier.

WARNING 62, Output Frequency at Maximum Limit:
The output frequency is limited by the value set in par. 4-19 Max *Output Frequency*

WARNING 64, Voltage Limit:
The load and speed combination demands a motor voltage higher than the actual DC link voltage.

WARNING/ALARM/TRIP 65, Control Card Over Temperature:
Control card over temperature: The cut-out temperature of the control card is 80° C.

WARNING 66, Heatsink Temperature Low:
The heat sink temperature is measured as 0° C. This could indicate that the temperature sensor is defective and thus the fan speed is increased to the maximum in case the power part or control card is very hot.
If the temperature is below 15° C the warning will be present.

ALARM 67, Option Configuration has Changed:
One or more options has either been added or removed since the last power-down.

ALARM 68, Safe Stop:
Safe Stop has been activated. To resume normal operation, apply 24 VDC to terminal 37 then send a Reset signal (via Bus, Digital I/O or by pressing [Reset]).

ALARM 69, Pwr. Card Temp:
Power card over temperature.

ALARM 70, Illegal Frequency Converter Configuration:
Actual combination of control board and power board is illegal.

Warning 73, Safe Stop Auto Restart:
Safe Stopped, the drive may autostart when Safe Stop is removed

WARNING 77, Reduced power mode:
This warning indicates that the drive is operating in reduced power mode (i.e. less than the allowed number of inverter sections). This warning will be generated on power cycle when the drive is set to run with fewer inverters and will remain on.

ALARM 79, Illegal PS config:
Current sensor connector at power card not installed or the scaling card is the incorrect part number or is not installed

ALARM 80, Drive Initialized to Default Value:
Parameter settings are initialized to default settings after a manual (three-finger) reset.

WARNING 85, Dang fail PB:
Profibus/Profisafe Error

ALARM 90, Feedback Mon.:

ALARM 91, Analogue Input 54 Wrong Settings:
Switch S202 has to be set in position OFF (voltage input), when a KTY sensor is connected to the analogue input terminal 54.

WARNING/ ALARM 92, NoFlow:
A no load situation has been detected for the system. See parameter group 22-2*.

WARNING/ ALARM, Dry Pump:
A no flow situation and high speed indicates that the pump has run dry. See parameter group 22-2*

WARNING/ ALARM 94, End of Curve:
Feed back stays lower than the set point, which may be indicates a leakage in the pipe system. See parameter group 22-5*

WARNING/ ALARM 95, Broken Belt:
Torque is below the torque level set for no load indicating a broken belt. See parameter group 22-6*

WARNING 96, Start Delayed:
Start of the motor has been delayed due to short cycle protection is active. See parameter group 22-7*.

WARNING 97, Stop Delayed:
Stop of the motor has been delayed due to short cycle protection is active. See parameter group 22-7*.

Warning 98, Clock Fault:
Date and time has not been set or any back up mounted has failed. See parameter group 0-7*.

ALARM 243, Brake IGBT:
F enclosure equivalent to fault 27 in D and E enclosures. Report value indicates source of the alarm (from left):
0-3 Inverter
4-7 Rectifier

ALARM 244, Heatsink temp:
F enclosure equivalent to fault 29 in D and E enclosures. Report value indicates source of the alarm (from left):
0-3 Inverter
4-7 Rectifier

ALARM 245, Heatsink sensor:
F enclosure equivalent to fault 39 in D and E enclosures. Report value indicates source of the alarm (from left):
0-3 Inverter
4-7 Rectifier

ALARM 246, Pwr. card supply:
F enclosure equivalent to fault 46 in D and E enclosures. Report value indicates source of the alarm (from left):
0-3 Inverter
4-7 Rectifier

ALARM 247, Pwr. card temp:
F enclosure equivalent to fault 69 in D and E enclosures. Report value indicates source of the alarm (from left):
0-3 Inverter
4-7 Rectifier

ALARM 248, Illegal PS config:
F enclosure equivalent to fault 79 in D and E enclosures. Report value indicates source of the alarm (from left):
0-3 Inverter
4-7 Rectifier

ALARM 250, New Spare Part:
The power or Switch Mode Power Supply has been exchanged. The frequency converter type code must be restored in the EEPROM. Select the correct type code in par. according to the label on unit. Remember to select 'Save to EEPROM' to complete.

ALARM 251, New Type Code:
The Frequency Converter has got a new type code.

Index

2

3

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

K

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W